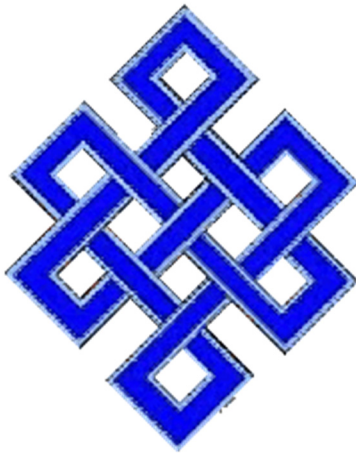


*Questioning the Buddha  
about Contradictions  
in his Teachings*

Jam-yang-shay-pa's  
*Great Exposition of the  
Interpretable and the Definitive: 2*



William Magee

In collaboration with Lo-sang-gyal-tshan  
Editing and comments by Jeffrey Hopkins

UMA INSTITUTE  
FOR TIBETAN STUDIES



## Questioning the Buddha about Contradictions



*Questioning the Buddha  
about Contradictions  
in his Teachings*

Jam-yang-shay-pa's  
*Great Exposition of the  
Interpretable and the Definitive: 2*

William Magee

In collaboration with Lo-sang-gyal-tshan

Editing and comments by Jeffrey Hopkins

UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies

[uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org)

Education in Compassion and Wisdom  
UMA Great Books Translation Project  
*UMA Great Books Translation Project*  
Expanding Wisdom and Compassion  
through Study and Contemplation

*Supported by generous grants from  
the Pierre and Pamela Omidyar Fund  
the Silicon Valley Community Foundation  
and a bequest from Daniel E. Perdue*

Translating texts from the heritage of Tibetan and Inner Asian Buddhist systems, the project focuses on Great Indian Books and Tibetan commentaries from the Go-mang College syllabus as well as a related theme on the fundamental innate mind of clear light in Tantric traditions. A feature of the Project is the usage of consistent vocabulary and format throughout the translations.

Publications are available online without cost under a Creative Commons License with the understanding that downloaded material must be distributed for free: <http://uma-tibet.org>. UMA stands for Union of the Modern and the Ancient (*gsar rnying zung 'jug khang*). The UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies is a non-profit 501(c)3 organization.

Mailing address: UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies  
4109 SE Howe St.  
Milwaukie, Oregon 97222  
USA

Version: August, 2019

ISBN: 978941381076

Library of Congress Control Number:

Magee, William (1949-)

Questioning the Buddha about contradictions in his teachings: jam-yang-shay-pa's great exposition of the interpretable and the definitive / by William Magee.

Includes bibliographical references.

ISBN: 978941381076

1. 'Jam dbyangs bzhad pa ngag dbang brtson grus, 1648-1722. Drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i mtha' dpyod 'khrul bral lung rigs bai dūr dkar po'i ngan mdzod skal bzang re ba kun skong. 2. Dge-lugs-pa (Sect)--Doctrines. 3. Drang nges chen mo. 4. Wisdom—Religious aspects--Buddhism.

I. Lo-sang-gyal-tshan, 1966- II. Title.



# Contents

Preface .....	7
Editions consulted.....	7
Technical Notes .....	9
The Collaborator.....	11
Jam-yang-shay-pa's <i>Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive: 2</i> Questioning the Buddha about contradictions .....	13
II. How the interpretable and the definitive are differentiated {2 parts} .....	15
The position relying on the Sūtra Unraveling the Thought {2 parts} .....	15
Stating what is said in the sūtra {4 parts} .....	15
a. A question about dispelling contradiction in the sūtras.....	16
1) Refuting [mistakes] .....	18
2) Presentation of our own system .....	107
3) Dispelling objections.....	110
Abbreviations .....	130
Bibliography .....	133
1. Sūtras .....	133
2. Other Sanskrit and Tibetan Works.....	135
3. Other Works.....	161



# Preface

The text translated here is a portion of Jam-yang-shay-pa Ngag-wang-tson-drü's<sup>a</sup> *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive / Decisive Analysis of (Tsong-kha-pa's) "Differentiating the Interpretable and the Definitive"*: *Storehouse of White Lapis-Lazuli of Scripture and Reasoning Free from Mistake, Fulfilling the Hopes of the Fortunate*,<sup>b</sup> a commentary on Tsong-kha-pa Lo-sang-drag-pa's<sup>c</sup> *The Essence of Eloquence*.<sup>d</sup> It belongs to the debate-oriented decisive analysis (*mtha'dpyod*) genre and is the textbook (*yig cha*) for the study of Tsong-kha-pa's *The Essence of Eloquence* at Go-mang Monastic College.

This section treats Tsong-kha-pa's analysis of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, including the Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata's question regarding an apparent contradiction in Buddha's sutras. The next volume will treat the Buddha's reply avoiding contradiction by revealing the thought behind his statements.

Readers interested in a detailed discussion of *The Essence of Eloquence* and an overview of Ge-lug-pa<sup>e</sup> writings on interpretation of scripture should consult the three volumes of Jeffrey Hopkins' *Dynamic Responses to Dzong-kha-ba's The Essence of Eloquence* devoted to the section of the Mind-Only School:

- *Emptiness in the Mind-Only School of Buddhism* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1999);
- *Reflections on Reality: The Three Natures and Non-Natures in the Mind-Only School* (Berkeley: University of California Press; 2002);
- *Absorption in No External World: 170 Issues in Mind-Only Buddhism* (Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2005).

The present work is indebted to these three volumes.

## EDITIONS CONSULTED

Two basic editions of Jam-yang-shay-pa's *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive* were consulted:

---

<sup>a</sup> *jam dbyangs bzhad pa'i rdo rje ngag dbang brtson grus*, 1648-1721/1722.

<sup>b</sup> Written circa 1686. Herein called *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and Definitive*.

<sup>c</sup> *tsong kha pa blo bzang grags pa*, 1357-1419.

<sup>d</sup> *drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par phye ba'i bstan bcos legs bshad snying po / legs bshad snying po*; Peking 6142, vol. 153.

<sup>e</sup> *dge lugs pa*.

1. *drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i mtha' dpyod 'khrul bral lung rigs bai dūr dkar pa'i ngan mdzod skal bzang re ba kun skong*, TBRC W22186.10: 1-288, which is a PDF of: *bla brang bkra shis 'khyil, bla brang brka shis 'khyil dgon*, publishing date unknown. Abbreviated reference: “2011 TBRC *bla brang*.”
2. *drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i mtha' dpyod 'khrul bral lung rigs bai dūr dkar pa'i gan mdzod skal bzang re ba kun skong*. Published at Go-mang College, date unknown. Abbreviated reference: “1987 Go-mang Lhasa,” so named because of being acquired by Jeffrey Hopkins in Lhasa, Tibet, at Go-mang College in 1987.

Also a codex edition based on the *bla brang* edition was used for convenience:

3. *drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i mtha' dpyod 'khrul bral lung rigs bai dūr dkar pa'i gan mdzod skal bzang re ba kun skong*. Taipei reprint (published by the Corporate Body of the Buddha Educational Foundation, Taipei, Taiwan, 2008) of the 1999 codex (Mundgod, India: Go-mang Library, 1999) based on the 1995 Mundgod revision (Mundgod, India: Go-mang College, 1995) of the 1973 Ngawang Gelek *bla brang* edition (New Delhi, India: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1973). Abbreviated reference: “2008 Taipei reprint.”

The digital Tibetan text of Jam-yang-shay-pa's *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive* provided in this book was supplied by the Drepung Gomang Library of Go-mang College in Mundgod, Karnataka State, India, which was likely based on the 1999 Mundgod codex. It has been edited in accordance with the “2011 TBRC *bla brang*” and the “1987 Go-mang Lhasa.”

# Technical Notes

It is important to recognize that:

- translations and editions of texts are given in the Bibliography;
- the names of Indian Buddhist schools of thought are translated into English in a wish to increase accessibility for non-specialists;
- for the names of Indian scholars and systems used in the body of the text, *ch*, *sh*, and *ṣh* are used instead of the more usual *c*, *ś*, and *ṣ* for the sake of easy pronunciation by non-specialists; however, *cch* is used for *cch*, not *chchh*. Within parentheses the usual transliteration system for Sanskrit is used;
- transliteration of Tibetan is done in accordance with a system devised by Turrell Wylie; see “A Standard System of Tibetan Transcription,” *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies*, 22 (1959): 261-267;
- the names of Tibetan authors and orders are given in “essay phonetics” for the sake of easy pronunciation; the system is aimed at internet searchability;
- titles of added subsections are given in square brackets;
- definitions are in bold type.



# The Collaborator

Lo-sang-gyal-tshan is a Ge-she at Go-mang College of Dre-pung Monastic University, Mundgod, Karnataka State, India, who also served a six-month term as Disciplinarian at the Tantric College of Lower Lhasa in Hunsur, India. In October, 2015, he assumed the position of Abbot of Go-mang College of Dre-pung Monastic University in Mundgod, India. He has worked with translators of the UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies since 2013. In particular, he provided crucial assistance with filling in the dialectical moves throughout the text and by responding to questions about the meaning.



# Jam-yang-shay-pa's *GREAT EXPOSITION OF THE INTERPRETABLE AND THE DEFINITIVE: 2* Questioning the Buddha about contradictions

*Decisive Analysis of (Tsong-kha-pa's) "Differentiating the Interpretable and the Definitive": Storehouse of White Vaidūrya of Scripture and Reasoning Free from Mistake, Fulfilling the Hopes of the Fortunate*

༄༅། །དྲུང་བ་དང་ངེས་པའི་དོན་རྣམ་པར་འབྱེད་པའི་མཐའ་  
དཔྱོད་འཇུག་གྲུལ་ལྷུང་རིགས་བཞུར་དཀར་པོའི་གན་མཛོད་  
སྐལ་བཟང་རེ་བ་ཀུན་སྐོང་ཞེས་བྱ་བ་བཞུགས་སོ། །

Second in the series: Jam-yang-shay-pa's *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*

1. *Principles for Practice: The Four Reliances*
2. *Questioning the Buddha about Contradictions in his Teachings*

Jam-yang-shay-pa's text is at the margin; comments by Jeffrey Hopkins are indented and in a three-sided box to clearly distinguish them from Jam-yang-shay-pa's text.

*Key to the colorization:* In situations of debate the Tibetan text and the translation are highlighted in three colors: black, blue, and red. **Blue colored statements present what Jam-yang-shay-pa considers to be right positions, while red colored statements represent what Jam-yang-shay-pa considers to be wrong positions.** Words in black are other information or

function structurally. In the Tibetan, turquoise highlight indicates material added in place of ellipses, and magenta highlight sets off the ellipsis indicators when the elided part has been filled in .



## II. HOW THE INTERPRETABLE AND THE DEFINITIVE ARE DIFFERENTIATED {2 PARTS}

This has two parts: the position relying on the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* and the position relying on *The Teachings of Akṣhayamati Sūtra*.

གཉིས་པ་དང་ངེས་ཇི་ལྟར་འབྱེད་ཚུལ་ལ་གཉིས། མདོ་སྡེ་  
 དགོངས་འགྲེལ་ལ་བརྟེན་པའི་སྟོགས་དང། སློ་གྲོས་མི་ཟད་པའི་  
 མདོ་ལ་བརྟེན་པའི་སྟོགས་སོ། །

### *THE POSITION RELYING ON THE SŪTRA UNRAVELING THE THOUGHT {2 PARTS}*

This has two parts: stating what is said in the sūtra and how Asaṅga and his [half-]brother [Vasubandhu] and so forth commented on its meaning.

དང་པོ་[མདོ་སྡེ་དགོངས་འགྲེལ་ལ་བརྟེན་པའི་སྟོགས་]ལ་གཉིས། མདོ་སྡེ་  
 ལས་ཇི་ལྟར་གསུངས་ཚུལ་དང། ཐོགས་མེད་སྐྱེ་མཆེད་སོགས་ཀྱིས་  
 དེའི་དོན་བཀྲལ་བའི་ཚུལ་ལོ། །

### Stating what is said in the sūtra {4 parts}

This has four parts: a question about dispelling contradiction in the sūtras, the answer dispelling that contradiction, identifying the entities of the three natures, and [Paramārthasamudgata's] offering [to Buddha] the meaning established by these.

དང་པོ་[མདོ་སྡེ་ལས་ཇི་ལྟར་གསུངས་ཚུལ་]ལ་བཞི། མདོ་སྡེ་ལ་འགལ་  
 སློང་གི་དྲི་བ། འགལ་བ་དེ་སློང་བའི་ལན། རོ་བོ་ཉིད་གསུམ་གྱི་དོ་  
 བོ་དོས་བཟུང་བ། ཐུབ་པའི་དོན་ལྷན་ཚུལ་ལོ། །

*a. A question about dispelling contradiction in the sūtras*

དང་པོ་[མདོ་སྡེ་ལ་འགལ་སྦྱང་གི་དྲི་བ་]ནི།

[Tsong-kha-pa paraphrases Paramārthasamudgata's questioning of the Buddha in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*]:

The Supramundane Victor [initially] pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates. He also pronounced their character of production, character of disintegration, abandonment, and thorough knowledge. Just as he did with respect to the aggregates, so he also pronounced with respect to the sense-spheres, dependent-arising, and the foods. In a similar fashion, he also pronounced the own-character of the [four] truths, thorough knowledge, abandonment, actualization, and meditation as well as the own-character of the constituents, the various [eighteen] constituents, and manifold [six] constituents, their abandonment, and thorough knowledge as well as the own-character of the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment [their] discordances, the antidotes, production of [virtues or antidotes] that have not been produced, the abiding of those that have been produced, nonloss [of antidotes that have been produced, their] arising again, and increasing and extending.

Also, the Supramundane Victor pronounced [in the middle wheel of the teaching], “All phenomena are natureless; all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally thoroughly passed beyond sorrow.”

Therefore, I am wondering of what the Supramundane Victor was thinking when he pronounced [in the middle wheel of the teaching], “All phenomena are natureless; all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally thoroughly passed beyond sorrow.” I [explicitly] ask the Supramundane Victor about the meaning of his pronouncing [in the middle wheel of the teaching], “All phenomena are natureless; all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally thoroughly passed beyond sorrow.”

བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་ཕྱང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་  
གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྩལ་ཞེས་པ་ནས། [སྐྱེ་བའི་མཚན་ཉིད་

དང་། འཇིག་པའི་མཚན་ཉིད་དང་། སྤང་བ་དང་ཡོངས་སུ་ཤེས་པ་ཡང་བཀའ་  
 ལྷན་། སྤང་བོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རི་ལྷ་བ་དེ་བཞིན་དུ་སྐྱེ་མཚེད་རྣམས་དང་རྟེན་ཅིང་འབྲེལ་  
 བར་འབྱུང་བ་དང་ཟས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་བར་ཡང་བཀའ་ལྷན་། དེ་བཞིན་དུ་སྐྱུར་ནས་བདེན་  
 པ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དང་ཡོངས་སུ་ཤེས་པ་དང་སྤང་བ་དང་མངོན་དུ་བགྱི་  
 བ་དང་བསྐྱོམ་པ་དང་ཁམས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དང་ཁམས་སྣ་ཚོགས་པ་  
 དང་ཁམས་དུ་མ་དང་སྤང་བ་དང་ཡོངས་སུ་ཤེས་པ་དང་། བྱང་ཕྱོགས་མོ་བདུན་གྱི་  
 རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དང་མི་མཐུན་པ་དང་གཉེན་པོ་དང་མ་སྐྱེས་པ་སྐྱེ་བ་དང་སྐྱེས་པ་  
 གནས་པ་དང་མི་བསྐྱུད་པ་དང་སྤྲུལ་ཞིང་འབྱུང་བ་དང་འཕེལ་ཞིང་ཡངས་བ་ཉིད་  
 ཀྱང་བཀའ་ལྷན་ལ། བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མ་མཚིས་པ་  
 ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་མ་སྐྱེས་པ་མ་འགགས་པ་གཞོན་མ་ནས་ཞི་བ་རང་བཞིན་གྱིས་ཡོངས་  
 སུ་སྐྱུ་ངན་ལས་འདས་པ་ཞེས་ཀྱང་བཀའ་ལྷན་ལགས་ན། བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་ཅི་  
 ལ་དགོངས་ནས་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མ་མཚིས་པ་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་མ་སྐྱེས་པ་མ་  
 འགགས་པ་བཞོན་མ་ནས་ཞི་བ་རང་བཞིན་གྱིས་ཡོངས་སུ་སྐྱུ་ངན་ལས་འདས་པ་ཞེས་  
 བཀའ་ལྷན་སྐྱེས་བགྱིད་ལགས་ཏེ། བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ལ་དགོངས་ནས་ཚོས་  
 ཐམས་ཅད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མ་མཚིས་པ་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་མ་སྐྱེས་པ་མ་འགགས་པ་གཞོན་མ་  
 ནས་ཞི་བ་རང་བཞིན་གྱིས་ཡོངས་སུ་སྐྱུ་ངན་ལས་འདས་པ་ཞེས་ཀྱང་བཀའ་ལྷན་  
 བའི་། དོན་དེ་ཉིད་བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ལ་བདག་ཡོངས་སུ་ལྷུ་ལགས་  
 སོ། ། ཞེས་པའི་བར་གསུངས།

On this occasion [of a question about dispelling contradiction in the  
 sūtras] there are three parts: refuting [mistakes], presentation of our own  
 system, and dispelling objections [to our own system].  
 འདིའི་སྐབས་སུ་དགག་བཞག་སྤངས་གསུམ་ལས།

# 1) REFUTING [MISTAKES]

དང་པོ་[དགག་པ་]ལ་

**1. Someone says:**<sup>a</sup> There is a way in which Paramārthasamudgata questions the Teacher [Buddha] in order to dispel contradiction because [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, Paramārthasamudgata] explicitly questions [Buddha in this way]:

In the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*,<sup>b</sup> the Supramundane Victor] said that phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects are equally established by way of their own character. In the middle wheel as indicated here, he said that phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects are equally not established by way of their own character. Even if, left as they are verbally, these two [statements] are contradictory, the Teacher must be without contradiction, therefore thinking of what did you teach in the middle [wheel of doctrine that all phenomena are equally natureless and so forth]?

[Paramārthasamudgata] implicitly asks of what [Buddha] was thinking when in the first wheel he spoke like that [namely, that phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects are equally established by way of their own character].

ཁ་ཅིག་དོན་དམ་ཡང་དག་འཕགས་ཀྱིས་སྟོན་པ་ལ་མདོ་སྡེ་ལ་  
འགལ་སྡོད་གི་དྲི་བ་ལྷས་ཚུལ་ཡོད་དེ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་  
དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་  
མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་སྐབ་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་  
བར་པར་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 13b.3; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 10b.2; 2008 Taipei reprint, 17.18.  
<sup>b</sup> Please note that “here” in the phrase “as indicated here” (*‘dir bstan*) in this text will always refer to the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*; therefore, I often omit the name of the sūtra.

མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས། འདི་གཉིས་སྒྲ་སོར་  
 བཞག་ན་འགལ་ནའང་སྟོན་པ་ལ་འགལ་བ་མི་མངའ་བས། བར་  
 བར་[འཁོར་ལོ་བར་བར་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་མཉམ་དུ་]དེ་ལྟར་གསུངས་པ་དེ་གང་ལ་  
 དགོངས་ནས་གསུངས་ཞེས་དངོས་སུ་བྱས་ནས། དང་པོར་དེ་  
 [གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་མཉམ་  
 དུ་]ལྟར་གསུངས་པ་དེ་གང་ལ་དགོངས་ནས་གསུངས་ཞེས་དོན་  
 ཀྱིས་བྱས་པའི་ཕྱིར་ཟེར་ན།

*Comment:* Jam-yang-shay-pa draws out the significance of how the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* states Paramārthasamudgata’s question to the Buddha about the apparent contradiction between the teachings in the first two wheels of doctrines by slowly considering the elements in each description. His robust treatment is accomplished by analyzing positions of unnamed Tibetan scholars in his own and other colleges with whom he disagrees. Fortunately Jam-yang-shay-pa’s followers have identified the holders of these positions most of which have their own dynamic framework though a very small number of opinions are easily recognizable mistakes, helpful to notice.

Here,<sup>a</sup> the first debate corrects an assertion by Pal-jor-lhün-drub<sup>b</sup> (1427-1514)—a textbook-author of Se-ra Jay College prior to Jay-tsun Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan<sup>c</sup> (1469-1544/1546), in his *Lamp for the Teaching: Commentary on the Difficult Points of (Tsong-kha-pa’s) “The Essence of Eloquence,”* a very helpful accessible condensation of Tsong-kha-pa’s *The Essence of Eloquence* that provides the gist of Tsong-kha-pa’s text without getting into a great deal of detail and without attempting either an expansive ex-

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Jeffrey Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World: 170 Issues in Mind-Only Buddhism. Dynamic Responses to Dzong-ka-ba’s The Essence of Eloquence*, Volume 3 (Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2005), Issue #21, 50-54.

<sup>b</sup> *dpal ’byor lhün grub, gnyal [or gnyan] ston.*

<sup>c</sup> *rje btsun chos kyi rgyal mtshan.*

planation or a word-by-word commentary. Making use of a correction previously made by Jay-tsun Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan as well as by Jam-yang-shay-pa's predecessor as textbook author of Gomang College, Gung-ru Chö-jung (fl. mid 16<sup>th</sup> to early 17<sup>th</sup> centuries),<sup>a</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa finds fault with Pal-jor-lhün-drub's statement that in the first wheel the topics that are the substrata of Buddha's teachings are *phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects*. Pal-jor-lhün-drub's *Lamp for the Teaching* says:

In the first wheel, the Supramundane Victor pronounced that phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects are established by way of their own character; in the middle wheel he pronounced that phenomena are natureless, and are unproduced, unceasing, and so forth [that is, quiescent from the start, and naturally passed beyond sorrow]. The Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata asks, "Since, if taken literally, [these statements] are manifestly contradictory, and since the Supramundane Victor must be without contradiction, thinking of what did you teach [in the middle wheel of doctrine that all phenomena are] natureless and so forth?"

བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་<sup>[D6b]</sup>འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་  
 གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཁུན་གྱི་བར་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་བཀའ་སྩལ། འཁོར་ལོ་བར་  
 བར་ཚོས་རྣམས་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མ་མཚིས་པ་དང་། མ་སྐྱེས་  
 བ་མ་འགགས་པ་སོགས་སུ་བཀའ་སྩལ་ན། བྱང་ཚུབ་  
 སེམས་དཔའ་དོན་དམ་ཡང་དག་འཕགས་ཀྱིས་སྐྱེས་  
 ཟེན་ན་འགལ་བར་མངོན་ལ། བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ལ་  
 འགལ་བ་<sup>[S8a]</sup>མེད་དགོས་པས། ཅི་ལ་དགོངས་ནས་ངོ་  
 བོ་ཉིད་མེད་པ་སོགས་སུ་གསུངས་པ་ཡིན་ཞེས་

As Jay-tsun Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan and Gung-ru Chö-jung earlier

<sup>a</sup> *gung ru chos 'byung / gung ru chos kyi 'byung gnas.*

pointed out and Jam-yang-shay-pa points out just below, this is a standard list of phenomena drawn from the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras in the Great Vehicle, and hence it is inappropriate here to use it when describing first wheel sūtras.<sup>a</sup>

*Our response:* Well then, it [absurdly] follows that in the first wheel indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] all phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects, having been taken as substrata, are explicitly said to be established by way of their own character because [according to you] your way [Paramārthasamudgata] questions [the Teacher] is logically feasible.

འོ་ན་<sup>[14a]</sup>འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་  
མཁེན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་ཐམས་ཅད་ལྷུང་གཞིར་བཟུང་ནས་རང་གི་  
མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་གསུངས་པར་ཐལ། ལྷུང་གྱི་  
དྲི་བ་ལྷུས་ཚུལ་འཐད་པའི་བྱིར།

If you [incorrectly] accept [that in the first wheel all phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects, having been taken as substrata, are explicitly said to be established by way of their own character], then it [absurdly] follows that in the first wheel as indicated here the one hundred and eight bases of exposition, having been taken as substrata, are explicitly said to be established by way of their own character because you [incorrectly] accept [that in the first wheel all phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects, having been taken as substrata, are explicitly said to be established by way of their own character].

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཁེན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་ཐམས་ཅད་  
ལྷུང་གཞིར་བཟུང་ནས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་གསུངས་  
པ་]འདོད་ན། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་འགྲེས་རྐང་བརྒྱ

<sup>a</sup> It is so obviously inappropriate that in a recent edition of Pal-jor-lhün-drub's text in Lhasa this line has been emended, without mention, from *gzugs nas rnam mkhyen gyi bar to gzugs nas byang phyogs so bdun gyi bar*; see *legs bshad snying po 'i dka' 'grel bstan pa 'i sgron me*, Tibetan digital reprint edition: BDRC W1AC225, 1 vol. (PDF of Lhasa: *ser gtsug nang bstan dpe rnying 'tshol bsdu phyogs sgrig khang*, date unknown), 9.2. In the Tibetan communities in India a decision was made in the mid-1960s to refrain from such emendations in reprints and in new editions for the sake of historical accuracy.

ཅ་བརྒྱད་ལྷད་གཞིར་བཟུང་ནས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 པར་དངོས་སུ་གསུངས་པར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བཞུན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་  
 གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་ལྷད་གཞིར་བཟུང་ནས་རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་གསུངས་པ་]འདྲོད་པའི་བྱིར།

*Comment:* The list of one hundred eight phenomena is extracted from the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras; mentioned briefly above, it begins with forms and ends with exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects, omniscience, these being the bases of the explanations of emptiness in the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras, called “the one hundred and eight bases of exposition” (*’grel rkang*). It is comprised by fifty-three impure phenomena and fifty-five pure phenomena, but the classification does not mean that all members of each class are afflictions or pure phenomena; the groupings are rough divisions:<sup>a</sup>

### ***The fifty-three phenomena of the afflicted class***

*The five aggregates which are the bases for the further division of most of the other phenomena:*

1. forms
2. feelings
3. discriminations
4. compositional factors
5. consciousnesses

*The six senses which are the supports of their respective consciousnesses:*

6. eye sense powers
7. ear sense powers
8. nose sense powers
9. tongue sense powers
10. body sense powers
11. mental sense powers

*The six consciousnesses which depend on these senses:*

12. eye consciousnesses

<sup>a</sup> The list is drawn from Hopkins, *Meditation on Emptiness* (London: Wisdom Publications, 1983; rev. ed., Boston, Ma.: Wisdom Publications, 1996), 201-212.



13. ear consciousnesses
14. nose consciousnesses
15. tongue consciousnesses
16. body consciousnesses
17. mental consciousnesses

*The objects of those consciousnesses:*

18. visible forms
19. sounds
20. odors
21. tastes
22. tangible objects
23. phenomena

*The six contacts (distinguishing objects as pleasant, unpleasant, or neutral) which arise upon the aggregations of a sense, an object, and a consciousness:*

24. contacts upon the aggregation of an eye sense, a visible form, and an eye consciousness
25. contacts upon the aggregation of an ear sense, a sound, and an ear consciousness
26. contacts upon the aggregation of a nose sense, an odor, and a nose consciousness
27. contacts upon the aggregation of a tongue sense, a taste, and a tongue consciousness
28. contacts upon the aggregation of a body sense, a tangible object, and a body consciousness
29. contacts upon the aggregation of a mental sense, a phenomenon, and a mental consciousness

*The six feelings which are the experiences arising from contacts:*

30. feelings arising from contact upon the aggregation of an eye sense, a visible form, and an eye consciousness
31. feelings arising from contact upon the aggregation of an ear sense, a sound, and an ear consciousness
32. feelings arising from contact upon the aggregation of a nose sense, an odor, and a nose consciousness
33. feelings arising from contact upon the aggregation of a tongue sense, a taste, and a tongue consciousness
34. feelings arising from contact upon the aggregation of a body sense, a tangible object, and a body consciousness

35. feelings arising from contact upon the aggregation of a mental sense, a phenomenon, and a mental consciousness

*The six elements which are the bases of production:*

36. earth
37. water
38. fire
39. wind
40. space
41. consciousness

*The twelve branches of dependent-arising, which are to be seen as disadvantageous:*

42. ignorance
43. action
44. consciousness
45. name and form
46. six sources
47. contact
48. feeling
49. attachment
50. grasping
51. existence
52. birth
53. aging and death

***The fifty-five phenomena of the pure class***

*The six perfections which are the paths of practice:*

1. giving
2. ethics
3. patience
4. effort
5. concentration
6. wisdom

*The eighteen emptinesses which are the paths of the view:*

7. emptiness of the internal, that is, of the five senses (*adhyātmaśūnyatā*)
8. emptiness of the external, that is, of the six types of objects which are the objects of the five senses and of the mental consciousness (*bahirdhāśūnyatā*)

9. emptiness of the internal and external, that is, of the loci of the senses, the gross orbs of the eyes, and so forth (*adhyātmabahirdhāsūnyatā*)
10. emptiness of emptiness, that is, of the emptiness that is the nature of phenomena (this eliminates the qualms of those who might think that emptiness truly exists because it is established by a consciousness which analyzes suchness) (*sūnyatāsūnyatā*)
11. emptiness of the great, that is, of the ten directions (*mahāsūnyatā*)
12. emptiness of the ultimate, that is, of nirvāṇa (*paramārthasūnyatā*)
13. emptiness of the compounded (*saṃskṛtaśūnyatā*)
14. emptiness of the uncompounded (*asaṃskṛtaśūnyatā*)
15. emptiness of what has passed beyond the extremes, that is, of what is free of the extremes of permanence and annihilation (*atyantaśūnyatā*)
16. emptiness of what is beginningless and endless, that is, of cyclic existence (*anavarāgraśūnyatā*)
17. emptiness of the indestructible, that is, of the indestructible Great Vehicle (*anavakāraśūnyatā*)
18. emptiness of nature, that is, of the emptinesses which are the nature of phenomena (this eliminates the qualms of those who might think that an emptiness truly exists because a final nature exists without being produced by anyone) (*prakṛtiśūnyatā*)
19. emptiness of all phenomena, that is, of the eighteen constituents, and so forth (*sarvadharmasūnyatā*)
20. emptiness of definitions, that is, of the definitions of all phenomena from forms through to omniscient consciousnesses (*lakṣaṇasūnyatā*)
21. emptiness of the unapprehendable, that is, of the past, present, and future which are unapprehendable as the cessation of phenomena, their presence, and their non-production (*anupalambhasūnyatā*)
22. emptiness of the inherent existence of non-things, that is, of inherently existent non-products (*abhāvasvabhāvasūnyatā*)
23. emptiness of things, that is, of the five aggregates (*bhāvasūnyatā*)

24. emptiness of non-things, that is, of non-products (*abhāvasūnyatā*)

*The thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment which are the yogic paths, divided into seven sections:*

25. four establishments in mindfulness—of body, feelings, thoughts, and phenomena—attained with the lesser path of accumulation. These are meditations on the impermanence, misery, emptiness, and selflessness of one's own body, feelings, thoughts, and other internal phenomena. Bodhisattvas would extend the field of meditation to include all sentient beings' bodies, feelings, and so forth.
26. four thorough abandonings—the abandoning of afflictions already generated, the non-generation of afflictions not yet generated, the increasing of pure phenomena already generated, and the generation of pure phenomena not yet generated—attained with the middling path of accumulation. These are called “thorough” abandonings because the mode of practice is suitable, when supplemented by the aspiration to highest enlightenment for the sake of all sentient beings, to lead one to Buddhahood. Without changing the type of object or mode of cognition, these paths lead to final enlightenment whereas the non-Buddhist “abandonings” have to be altered in form to lead to the final aim. Even the accomplishments of virtues are 'abandonings' because their respective opposites must be forsaken.
27. four legs of manifestation—aspiration, effort, thought, and analysis. These are called “legs” because they are prerequisites for magical manifestation. The four exist simultaneously when a manifestation is actually being made, and they are serial when one is practicing magical manifestation, first generating an aspiration to create a manifestation, and so forth. They are attained on the great path of accumulation
28. five powers—faith, effort, mindfulness, meditative stabilization, and wisdom—attained on the levels of heat and peak of the path of preparation
29. five forces—faith, effort, mindfulness, meditative stabilization, and wisdom—attained on the levels of forbearance and supreme mundane qualities of the path of preparation

30. seven branches of enlightenment—mindfulness, discrimination of phenomena, effort, joy, pliancy, meditative stabilization, and equanimity—attained with the path of seeing
31. eight-fold path—correct views, correct realization, correct speech, correct aims of actions, correct livelihood, correct effort, correct mindfulness, and correct meditative stabilization—attained with the path of meditation. When the state of Foe Destroyer is actualized, all thirty-seven harmonies of enlightenment have been attained.

*The paths of calming:*

32. four noble truths—true sufferings, true origins of suffering, true cessations of suffering, and true paths out of suffering
33. four concentrations—first, second, third, and fourth concentrations
34. four immeasurables—equanimity, love, compassion, and joy
35. four formless absorptions—infinite space, infinite consciousness, nothingness, and peak of cyclic existence
36. eight liberations: these eight are called 'liberations' not because they liberate beings from cyclic existence but because they free beings from the manifest activity of specific afflictions. They are to be distinguished from complete cessations of afflictions which involve the conquest of both the manifest appearance and the potencies of the afflictions.
  1. the embodied looking at a form: yogis consider themselves to be a being with a body and cultivate any of the four concentrations which are included in the Form Realm
  2. the formless looking at a form: yogis consider themselves to be a being without a body and cultivate any of the four concentrations which are included in the Form Realm
  3. beautiful form: yogis consider themselves to have an attractive body and cultivate any of the four concentrations which are included in the Form Realm. (The above three are considered prerequisites for making physical manifestations and are called the three paths

- of manifestation.)
4. infinite space: yogis concentrate on space and imagine it is infinite with just space as his object of observation
  5. infinite consciousness: yogis concentrate on consciousness and imagine it is infinite with just consciousness as their object of observation
  6. nothingness: yogis imagine that there is nothing to be apprehended and no apprehender
  7. peak of cyclic existence: yogis imagine that there are no coarse objects to be apprehended but that there are subtle objects of apprehension
  8. equipoise of cessation: yogis enter a state of meditative equipoise which is the absence of the manifest activity of the six consciousnesses
37. nine serial absorptions—first concentration, second concentration, third concentration, fourth concentration, infinite space, infinite consciousness, nothingness, peak of cyclic existence, and absorption of cessation
38. paths of insight—meditative stabilization on the three doors of liberation: wishlessness, signlessness, and emptiness. Wishlessness is the emptiness of a phenomenon from the point of view of its not inherently producing effects.<sup>157</sup> Signlessness is the emptiness of a phenomenon from the point of view of its not having been inherently produced from causes. Emptiness is the emptiness of the entity of a phenomenon itself.

*The paths of special qualities:*

39. five clairvoyances—divine eye, divine ear, knowledge of others' minds, memory of former lives, and knowledge of the extinction of contaminations
40. four meditative stabilizations—'going as a hero', 'sky treasury', 'stainless', and 'loftily looking lion'
41. four doors of retention—the retention of patience (for the sake of fearlessness with respect to emptiness), the retention of secret speech (for the ability to make spells to pacify the injurious), the retention of words (for not forgetting names, thoughts, and meanings), the retention of meaning (for not forgetting the individual and general characteristics of phenomena)

*The paths of effect:*

## 42. ten powers:

1. knowledge of sources and non-sources. This is direct knowledge of cause and effect within cyclic existence, such as the arising of pleasure from virtues and of pain from non-virtues, and direct knowledge of causes and effects included within the class of pure phenomena, such as the paths and their fruits. This first power is achieved through steadiness with respect to ascertaining the relation of cause and effect and with respect to the two forms of the mind of enlightenment—the aspiration to highest enlightenment for the sake of all beings as well as its consequent practices and the wisdom directly cognizing emptiness.
2. knowledge of the fruition of actions. This is direct knowledge of the definiteness of actions (such as the fact that non-virtues never cause pleasure and virtues never cause pain), the increase of the potencies established by actions, the non-wasting of deeds done, and the non-meeting with the effects of actions not done by oneself. It is achieved through conviction in the relationship of actions and their effects.
3. knowledge of those who are superior and those who are inferior, or those who have faith and those having heavy afflictions and so forth. It is achieved through teaching doctrines in accordance with the faculties of trainees.
4. knowledge of the varieties of dispositions. This is the knowledge of the many different lineages in the mental continuums of trainees. It is achieved through teaching doctrines in accordance with the dispositions of trainees.
5. knowledge of the varieties of trainees' interests in the various great and small vehicles. It is achieved through teaching doctrines in accordance with the interests of trainees.
6. knowledge of the paths proceeding to cyclic existences and of the paths to the three enlightenments of Hearers, Solitary Realizers, and Bodhisattvas. It is achieved through practicing the various vehicles and

paths.

7. knowledge of the concentrations (*dhyāna*), liberations (*vimokṣa*), meditative stabilizations (*samādhi*), and meditative absorptions (*samāpatti*), and knowledge of others' afflictions and others' non-contamination. It is achieved through completing the practice of meditative stabilization.
8. knowledge mindful of former states. This is direct knowledge of all former lives of oneself and others. It is achieved through not having spoiled the roots of virtue during the paths of learning.
9. knowledge of one's own and others' deaths and births. This is included within the clairvoyance of the divine eye and is achieved through formerly giving lamps and supramundane paths to sentient beings.
10. knowledge of the extinction of all contaminations. This is achieved through formerly teaching doctrines for the sake of extinguishing contaminations and through one's own actualization of such meaning.

The six knowledges of (1) sources and non-sources, (2) fruition of actions, (3) the superior and inferior, (4) varieties of dispositions, (5) varieties of interests, and (6) paths are similar to a diamond instrument piercing the armor of the obstructions to omniscience. The three knowledges of (7) the concentrations and so forth, (8) former states, and (9) death and birth are similar to a diamond instrument destroying the wall of the obstructions to meditative absorption. The knowledge of (10) extinction of all contaminations is similar to a diamond instrument cutting the trees of the afflictive obstructions.

43. four fearlessnesses:

1. fearlessness with respect to the assertion, 'I am completely and perfectly enlightened with respect to all phenomena.' For, one will not encounter even the name of an opponent who could correctly say that one does not know such and such a phenomenon. It is achieved through lacking any stinginess with respect to the doctrine.
2. fearlessness with respect to teaching that the afflictive obstructions are obstacles to liberation and that the



obstructions to omniscience are obstacles to simultaneous cognition of all phenomena, and that, therefore, these are to be ceased. For, one will not encounter even the name of an opponent who could correctly say that reliance on desire and so forth would not obstruct a being from liberation. It is achieved through not falling under the influence of an obstructive doctrine.

3. fearlessness with respect to teaching the paths of deliverance. For, there is no opponent who could say correctly that these paths are not paths leading to liberation. It is achieved through practicing the paths to liberation.
4. fearlessness with respect to asserting that the contaminations have been extinguished. For, one will not see even the name of an opponent who could correctly dispute the assertion that one has attained the cessation of all afflictions and their potencies. It is achieved through formerly abandoning pride.
44. four sciences—knowledge of doctrines, of the general and specific characters of phenomena, of the many languages so that appropriate definitions can be given, and of the varieties of entities, aspects, relationships, and differences of phenomena in the sense of having the bravery to make these distinctions
45. great love
46. great compassion
47. eighteen unshared attributes of Buddhas:
  1. being non-mistaken physically, such as not going on the wrong road
  2. being non-mistaken verbally
  3. not decreasing in mindfulness
  4. not ever not being in meditative equipoise
  5. not having the various discriminations of one-pointedly apprehending cyclic existence as to be forsaken and nirvana as to be attained, or, in other words, not discriminating cyclic existence and nirvāṇa, or phenomena and their emptiness, as different entities
  6. not being disinterested
  7. aspiration
  8. effort

9. mindfulness
10. wisdom
11. non-degeneration of liberation, that is, non-degeneration from the abandonment of obstructions
12. non-degeneration of the wisdom realizing liberation
13. 14. 15. governing by wisdom the activities of body, speech, and mind
16. 17. 18. unobstructed wisdom with respect to all objects of knowledge in the past, present, and future due to the absence of any impeding obstructions

*The five beings who actualize the paths:*

48. Stream Enterers
49. Once Returners
50. Never Returners
51. Foe Destroyers
52. Solitary Realizers

*The three final fruits:*

53. knowers of the bases, Hearers' cognitions of emptiness
54. knowers of the paths, Bodhisattvas' cognitions of emptiness
55. exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects, Buddhas' cognitions of all phenomena simultaneously.

You cannot accept [that in the first wheel as indicated here the one hundred and eight bases of exposition, having been taken as substrata, are explicitly said to be established by way of their own character] because [Buddha], without taking the one hundred and eight bases of exposition as substrata in the explicit rendering of the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*], takes a small number of phenomena such as the aggregates and so forth as the substrata because Tsong-kha-pa's *The Essence of Eloquence* says:<sup>a</sup>

Initially, at Varaṇāsi, he spoke of the selflessness of persons; [thus]

<sup>a</sup> Sarnath gtsang edition (Sarnath, India: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Press, 1973), 87.15-20. According to Jam-yang-shay-pa, the passage should read:

Initially, at Varaṇāsi, he spoke of the selflessness of persons; [thus] there is one cycle [of teaching], in which the true establishment of the phenomena of the aggregates and so forth—[these being] no more than a few [of the one hundred and eight phenomena]—is not refuted and true existence is mentioned frequently.

there is one cycle [of teaching], in which the true establishment of the phenomena of the aggregates and so forth, except for a few, is not refuted and true existence is mentioned frequently.

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་འགྲེས་རྐང་བརྒྱ་ཅུ་བརྒྱད་ལྷན་གཞིར་བཟུང་ནས་  
 རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་གསུངས་པར་]འདོད་མི་རུས་ཏེ།  
 འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་དངོས་ཟེན་ལ་འགྲེས་རྐང་  
 བརྒྱད་ཅུ་བརྒྱད་ལྷན་གཞིར་མ་བཟུང་བར་ཡུང་སོགས་ཀྱི་ཚོས་  
 ཉུང་ཤས་ཤིག་ལྷན་གཞིར་བཟུང་བའི་ལྷན་པར་འཐད་པའི་ཕྱིར་  
 ཏེ། འདི་ཉིད་ལས། དང་པོར་ཕ་ན་ཤ་སིར་གང་ཟག་གི་བདག་  
 མེད་གསུངས་ཤིང་། ཡུང་པོ་ལ་སོགས་པའི་ཚོས་ལ་ཉུང་ཤས་ཤིག་  
 མ་གཏོགས་བདེན་པར་གྲུབ་པ་མ་བཞག་ཅིང་བདེན་པར་ཡོད་པ་  
 མང་དུ་གསུངས་པའི་སྐོར་ཞིག་གོ། ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར།

Moreover, it [absurdly] follows that in the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] the twenty emptinesses, having been taken as substrata, are explicitly said to be established by way of their own character because you [incorrectly] accept [that in the first wheel all phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects, having been taken as substrata, are explicitly said to be established by way of their own character].

གཞན་ཡང་། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་སྟོང་ཉིད་ཉི་ཤུ་  
 ལྷན་གཞིར་བཟུང་ནས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་  
 སུ་གསུངས་པར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་  
 མཁྱེན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་ལྷན་གཞིར་བཟུང་ནས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 པར་དངོས་སུ་གསུངས་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

If you [incorrectly] accept [that the twenty emptinesses, having been taken as substrata, are explicitly said to be established by way of their own character], then it [absurdly] follows that the twenty emptinesses are explicitly taught in the literal rendering in the first wheel as indicated here

because you [incorrectly] accept [that the twenty emptinesses, having been taken as substrata, are explicitly said to be established by way of their own character].

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་སྟོང་ཉིད་ཉི་ཤུ་ལྷན་གཞིར་བཟུང་ནས་རང་གི་  
མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་གསུངས་པ་]འདོད་ན། འདིར་བསྟན་  
འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་སྟོང་ཉིད་ཉི་ཤུ་སྐྱས་ཟེན་ལ་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་  
པར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་སྟོང་ཉིད་ཉི་ཤུ་ལྷན་གཞིར་བཟུང་  
ནས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་གསུངས་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

If you [incorrectly] accept [that the twenty emptinesses are explicitly taught in the literal rendering in the first wheel as indicated here], it [absurdly] follows that this [first wheel] explicitly teaches the twenty emptinesses, because you [incorrectly] accept [that the twenty emptinesses are explicitly taught in the literal rendering in the first wheel]. If you [incorrectly] accept [that this first wheel explicitly teaches the twenty emptinesses], it [absurdly] follows that this [first wheel] extensively explicitly teaches emptiness because you [incorrectly] accept [that this first wheel explicitly teaches the twenty emptinesses in the first wheel as indicated here].

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་སྟོང་ཉིད་ཉི་ཤུ་སྐྱས་ཟེན་ལ་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་  
པར་]འདོད་ན། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེས་སྟོང་ཉིད་ཉི་ཤུ་དངོས་སུ་  
བསྟན་པར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་སྟོང་ཉིད་ཉི་ཤུ་སྐྱས་ཟེན་ལ་  
དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པར་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེས་སྟོང་ཉིད་ཉི་ཤུ་  
དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པ་]འདོད་ན། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེས་སྟོང་  
ཉིད་རྒྱས་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པར་ཐལ། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེས་སྟོང་  
ཉིད་ཉི་ཤུ་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

It is not reasonable to accept [that the first wheel extensively explicitly teaches emptiness] because those are Lesser Vehicle sūtra [passages].

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེས་སྟོང་ཉིད་རྒྱས་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་

པར་འདོད་མི་རིགས་ཏེ། དེ་ཐེག་དམན་གྱི་མདོ་ཡིན་པའི་སྤྱིར་  
རྟོ།<sup>[14b]</sup>

Unpacking Debate 1 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa's Positions [18]	
1	It is mistaken to hold that in the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> all phenomena <b>ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects</b> are taken as substrata for Buddha's teaching. Rather, in the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> all phenomena <b>ranging from forms through the 37 harmonies with enlightenment</b> are taken as the substrata of Buddha's teaching.
2	Permutations of the above point are that in the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the 108 bases of exposition in the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras are not taken as substrata for the first wheel teaching; rather, Buddha takes a small number of phenomena such as the aggregates and so forth as the substrata.</li> <li>• the twenty emptinesses are not taken as substrata.</li> </ul>
3	The twenty emptinesses are not <i>explicitly</i> taught in the literal rendering in the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> .
4	This first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> does not <i>explicitly</i> teach the twenty emptinesses because those are Lesser Vehicle sūtra passages.
5	This first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> does not <i>extensively explicitly</i> teach emptiness because the first wheel does not extensively teach emptiness.

**2. About this formulation, someone says:**<sup>a</sup> It follows that **this [first wheel] explicitly teaches that all phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects are established by way of their own character because this [first wheel] explicitly teaches these [phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects]—upon including them in the eighteen constituents—to be established by way of their own character. It**

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 14b.1; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 11a.3; 2008 Taipei reprint, 18.19.

follows [that this first wheel explicitly teaches these phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects—upon including them in the eighteen constituents—to be established by way of their own character] because this [first wheel] explicitly teaches these [phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects]—upon including them in the eighteen constituents—to be established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them.

བྱས་པ་ལ་ཁོ་ན་རེ། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེས་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱི་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པར་ཐལ། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེས་[གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་]དེ་རྣམས་ཁམས་བཅོ་བརྒྱད་དུ་བསྟུས་ནས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་ཕྱིར། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེས་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་དེ་རྣམས་ཁམས་བཅོ་བརྒྱད་དུ་བསྟུས་ནས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པ་]དེར་ཐལ། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེས་[གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་]དེ་རྣམས་ཁམས་བཅོ་བརྒྱད་དུ་བསྟུས་ནས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་ཕྱིར་ན་

*Comment.*<sup>a</sup> Here at the end of the opponent's position, Jam-yang-shay-pa agrees with the point that "establishment by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them" is not a subset of "establishment by way of their own character." Thus, a teaching that phenomena are "established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them" does not have to teach that those phenomena are "established by way of their own character."

As Jam-yang-shay-pa subsequently will explain, he holds that according to the presentation in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 56-57 (Issue #24: "Can this topic be trivialized?").

the statement in the first wheel of doctrine that “all phenomena are established by way of their own character” actually means “all phenomena are established by way of their own character *as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them*” but this does not entail that the first wheel teaches that all phenomena are established by way of their own character. This crucial point is couched in Gung-ru Chö-jung’s<sup>a</sup> and Jam-yang-shay-pa’s<sup>b</sup> presentation of the seemingly counter-intuitive position that:

**Upon the one hundred and eight phenomena being included in the eighteen constituents,** first-wheel sūtras explicitly teach the one hundred and eight as established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses.<sup>c</sup>

This may mean that **if** for the listener’s mind the one hundred and eight phenomena are included in the eighteen constituents, then when the eighteen constituents are taught as being established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses, the one hundred and eight phenomena are similarly taught to be established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses. However, it seems to me that the one hundred and eight phenomena would not be so included for the intended trainees of first wheel of doctrine; hence, there does not seem to be any intended listener of the first wheel for whom they would be included. And so I wonder to what situation they are referring?

Nevertheless, Gung-ru Chö-jung backs up this situation by drawing a parallel with two lines from the beginning of Maitreya’s *Ornament for Clear Realization* (I.3ab):

The perfection of wisdom will be thoroughly  
Explained by way of eight categories.<sup>d</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung’s *Garland of White Lotus*, 5b.1-6a.2.

<sup>b</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa’s *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*, 27.6-28.3.

<sup>c</sup> *des de rnam khams bco bryad du bsdus nas rang ’dzin rtoq pa’i zhen gzhir rang gi mtshan nyid kyis grub par dngos su bstan.*

<sup>d</sup> Ngag-wang-pal-dan’s word-commentary on these lines is:

**The perfection of wisdom**, which in the expression of worship is praised and made obeisance as the subject matter, **will be thoroughly**, that is, entirely, **explained by** this treatise in the manner of a division of the means of expression into eight chapters and the subject matter into **eight categories**.

Gung-ru Chö-jung holds that the two lines in Maitreya's *Ornament* do not explicitly teach the seventy topics (which are the sub-topics of the eight categories)<sup>a</sup> but does explicitly teach them **upon their being included in the eight categories**. However, are **the inclusion of the one hundred and eight phenomena in the eighteen constituents** in the context of the first-wheel teaching according to the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* and **the inclusion of the seventy topics in the eight categories** in this stanza in Maitreya's *Ornament for the Clear Realizations* parallel? In Maitreya's text the seventy topics are subsections of the eight categories which are the topics of his text, but in the scriptures of the first wheel there is no intention to teach the one hundred and eight phenomena in the first wheel according to the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*.

Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa may merely be making the point that the one hundred and eight phenomena are in general included in the eighteen constituents and that in the first wheel the eighteen constituents are explicitly taught to be established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses, and hence it must be said that **upon the one hundred and eight phenomena being included in the eighteen constituents**, first-wheel sūtras explicitly teach them as established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses. The shock-value of their presentation rests on the assumption that when in the first phrase it is said that the one hundred and eight phenomena are somehow included in the eighteen constituents, it

---

Jeffrey Hopkins and Jongbok Yi, *Ngag-wang-pal-dan's Explanation of the Treatise "Ornament for the Clear Realizations"* From the Approach of the Meaning of the Words: The Sacred Word of Maitreyañātha (Dyke, VA: UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, 2014: downloadable at [uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org)), 46.

<sup>a</sup> The eight categories are:

1. knowledge of all aspects (*rnam pa thams cad mkhyen pa nyid, sarvākārajñatā*)
2. knowledge of paths (*lam shes nyid, mārgajñatā*)
3. knowledge of bases (*gzhi shes, vastujñāna*)
4. complete training in all the aspects (*rnam rdzogs sbyor ba/rnam kun mngon par rdzogs par rtogs pa, sarvākārabhisambodha*)
5. peak training (*rtse sbyor, mūrdhaprayoga*)
6. serial training (*mthar gyis sbyor ba, anupūrvaprayoga*)
7. momentary training (*skad cig ma'i sbyor ba, kṣaṇikaprayoga*)
8. body of attributes, the fruit (*chos sku, dharmakāya*).



**seems** that this is being said with respect to the worldview of first-wheel sūtras, but it simply is not. Their maneuver, rather than providing a counter-intuitive context for a crucial point they are about to make, is befuddling and does not measure up to the important point they are about to make, namely, that teaching any phenomenon to be *established by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness apprehending it* does not entail teaching this phenomenon to be *established by way of its own character*.

*Our response:* [That this first wheel explicitly teaches these phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects—upon including them in the eighteen constituents—to be established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them] does not entail [that this first wheel explicitly teaches these phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects—upon including them in the eighteen constituents—to be established by way of their own character].

[འཕྲོ་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེས་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་དེ་རྣམས་ཁམས་བཅོ་  
བརྒྱད་དུ་བསྐྱས་ནས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་  
པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་ན་དེས་དེ་རྣམས་ཁམས་བཅོ་བརྒྱད་དུ་བསྐྱས་ནས་རང་གི་མཚན་  
ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པས་]མ་བྱེད།

The sign [which is that this first wheel explicitly teaches these phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects—upon including them in the eighteen constituents—to be established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses] is established because it is reasonable to comment on such statements [in the first wheel of establishment by way of its own character] as being of interpretable meaning because Tsong-kha-pa's *The Essence of Eloquence* says:<sup>a</sup>

Statements that those two [that is, phenomenon-constituent and phenomenon-sense-sphere] are established by way of their own character without differentiating [from among phenomena what does and does not exist by way of its own character] also require interpretation.

<sup>a</sup> See Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 235.

[འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེས་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་དེ་རྣམས་ཁམས་བཅོ་  
 བརྒྱད་དུ་བསྐྱས་ནས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 བར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པ་] ཉུགས་གྲུབ་སྟེ། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེས་[རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་]དེ་སྟར་གསུངས་པ་དང་དོན་དུ་འགྲེལ་རིགས་  
 པའི་ཕྱིར། འདི་ཉིད་ལས། མ་ཕྱེ་བར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 བར་གསུངས་པ་ཡང་དང་དོན་ནོ། ། ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར།

*Comment.*<sup>a</sup> With more context, the passage is:

Since an imputational factor imputed to phenomena in the manner of entity and attribute is a phenomenon-constituent (*chos kyi khams, dharmadhātu*) and a phenomenon-sense-sphere (*chos kyi skye mched, dharmāyatana*), statements that those two [that is, phenomenon-constituent and phenomenon-sense-sphere] are established by way of their own character without differentiating [from among phenomena what does and does not exist by way of its own character] also<sup>b</sup> require interpretation.

Since these two, as categories, contain instances (such as uncompounded space) that are permanent, the categories themselves are considered to be permanent and hence not established by way of their own character. Tsong-kha-pa's more specific reference is to imputational natures that are factors imputed in the manner of entity and attribute, and when it is taught in the first wheel that all phenomena, without differentiation, are established by way of their own character, these imputational natures, being existent, also are included as being established by way of their own character. Since they exist but actually do not exist by way of their own character, such scriptures also (that is, in addition to those teaching external objects) require interpretation.

Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho<sup>c</sup> says that, with respect to the teaching that all phenomena are established by way of their own character, the **factual basis in Buddha's thought** is that other-

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 134-135 fn. a.

<sup>b</sup> About the word "also," see Hopkins, *Absorption*, Issues #52 and 53, pp. 133-141.

<sup>c</sup> *Port of Entry*, 699.6.

powered natures and thoroughly established natures are established by way of their own character; the **purpose** is to prevent the annihilationist view of holding that imputational natures do not exist at all; and the **damage to the literal reading** is the reasonings proving that imputational natures are not established by way of their own character.

Notice that here in the citation from Tsong-kha-pa “established by way of its own character” does not mean “*established by way of their own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness apprehending it*” but only means “established by way of its own character,” and notice that the framework of “upon the 108 phenomena being included in the eighteen constituents” has been dropped—in fact never to return for further consideration. How much easier if Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa had not begun this discussion within this framework and instead used “phenomena ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment”! Maybe this mind-bender was current during Gung-ru Chö-jung’s time, and Jam-yang-shay-pa retained it in his editing and re-writing of the earlier Go-mang textbook.

Moreover, it [absurdly] follows that [according to you] when teaching the mode of pronunciation in the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*], **there is no need** [for the Buddha] to specify these phenomena ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment:<sup>a</sup>

The Supramundane Victor pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates. He also pronounced their character of production, character of disintegration, abandonment, and thorough knowledge. Just as he did with respect to the aggregates, so he also pronounced with respect to the sense-spheres, dependent-arising, and the [four] foods. In a similar fashion, he also pronounced the own-character of the [four] truths, thorough knowledge, abandonment, actualization, and meditation as well as the own-character of the constituents, the various [eighteen] constituents, and manifold [six] constituents, their abandonment, and thorough knowledge as well as the own-character of the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment.

<sup>a</sup> Translation adapted from Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 76-77.

because [according to you] your thesis [that this first wheel explicitly teaches that all phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects are established by way of their own character] is logically feasible.

གཞན་ཡང་། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་བཀའ་སྡེ་ལྔ་ལྔ་  
 ལྟོན་པ་ན། [བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གངས་དུ་མར་ལུང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡེ་ལྔ་ལྔ་ གྱེ་བའི་མཚན་ཉིད་དང་། འཛིག་པའི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 དང་། སྤང་བ་དང་ཡོངས་སུ་ཤེས་པ་ཡང་བཀའ་སྡེ་ལྔ་ལྔ་ ལུང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་ཇི་ལྟ་བུ་དེ་  
 བཞིན་དུ་གྱེ་མཚད་རྣམས་དང་རྟེན་ཅིང་འབྲེལ་བར་འབྱུང་བ་དང་ཟས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་བར་  
 ཡང་བཀའ་སྡེ་ལྔ་ལྔ་ དེ་བཞིན་དུ་སྦྱར་ནས་བདེན་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དང་  
 ཡོངས་སུ་ཤེས་པ་དང་སྤང་བ་དང་མངོན་དུ་བཞི་བ་དང་བསྐྱོམ་པ་དང་ཁམས་རྣམས་  
 ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དང་ཁམས་སྣ་ཚོགས་པ་དང་ཁམས་དུ་མ་དང་སྤང་བ་དང་  
 ཡོངས་སུ་ཤེས་པ་དང་། བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་།]ཞེས་  
 གཞུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་ཚེས་འདི་དག་དམིགས་  
 ཀྱིས་བཀའ་ནས་སྦྱོས་པ་ལ་དགོས་པ་མེད་པར་ཐལ། [དེས་གཞུགས་  
 རས་རྣམ་མཁྱེན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚེས་ཐམས་ཅད་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱི་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་  
 བསྟན་པ་]དམ་བཅའ་འཐད་པའི་བྱིར།

*Comment.*<sup>a</sup> “Phenomena ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment” are seven groups of phenomena called the “seven pronouncements” (*bka’ stsal bdun*):

- five aggregates
- twelve sense-spheres: the six objects (forms, sounds, odors, tastes, tangible objects, and other phenomena) and the six senses (eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mental sense powers)
- twelve links of dependent-arising: ignorance, action, consciousness, name and form, six sense-spheres, contact, feeling, attachment, grasping, “existence,” birth, and aging and death

<sup>a</sup> For detail see Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 30ff.

- four foods: morsels of food, contact, intention, and consciousness<sup>a</sup>
- four noble truths
- six and eighteen constituents: respectively, earth, water, fire, wind, space, and consciousness; and the six senses (eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mental sense powers), the six objects (forms, sounds, odors, tastes, tangible objects, and other phenomena), and the six consciousnesses (eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mental consciousnesses)
- thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment:
  - I. FOUR ESTABLISHMENTS THROUGH MINDFULNESS
    1. mindful establishment on body
    2. mindful establishment on feeling
    3. mindful establishment on mind
    4. mindful establishment on phenomena
  - II. FOUR THOROUGH ABANDONINGS
    5. generating virtuous qualities not yet generated
    6. increasing virtuous qualities already generated
    7. not generating non-virtuous qualities not yet generated
    8. thoroughly abandoning non-virtuous qualities already generated
  - III. FOUR LEGS OF MANIFESTATION
    9. aspiration
    10. effort
    11. contemplation<sup>b</sup>
    12. analytical meditative stabilization
  - IV. FIVE FACULTIES
    13. faith
    14. effort
    15. mindfulness
    16. meditative stabilization
    17. wisdom
  - V. FIVE POWERS
    18. faith
    19. effort
    20. mindfulness
    21. meditative stabilization

<sup>a</sup> For identification of the four foods see Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #14.

<sup>b</sup> *sems*.

- 22. wisdom
- VI. SEVEN BRANCHES OF ENLIGHTENMENT
- 23. correct mindfulness
- 24. correct discrimination of phenomena
- 25. correct effort
- 26. correct joy
- 27. correct pliancy
- 28. correct meditative stabilization
- 29. correct equanimity
- VII. EIGHTFOLD PATH
- 30. correct view
- 31. correct realization
- 32. correct speech
- 33. correct aims of actions
- 34. correct livelihood
- 35. correct exertion
- 36. correct mindfulness
- 37. correct meditative stabilization

These seven groups of phenomena are contained within the longer list of the 108 of the bases of exposition in the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras, given above, but it is a shorter list, this being why in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* Buddha specifies these phenomena ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as being the bases of exposition in the first wheel of doctrine.

### Unpacking Debate 2 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa's Positions [35]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Jam-yang-shay-pa holds that the first wheel of doctrine as indicated in <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> seems to say that “all phenomena are established by way of their own character,” but it is actually saying that “all phenomena are established by way of their own character <i>as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them.</i> ” Hence, even if someone deliberately included all these (108) phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects in the eighteen constituents mentioned in a first-wheel sūtra, still it would not teach that all (108) phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects are <i>established by way of their own</i> |
|---|--|

	<p><i>character</i> because this first-wheel sūtra would be explicitly indicating that these (108) phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects—<i>upon their being included</i> in the eighteen constituents—are <i>established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them</i>.</p>
2	<p>Therefore, that this first wheel of doctrine explicitly indicates that these (108) phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects—<i>upon their being included</i> in the eighteen constituents—are <i>established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them</i> does not entail that this first wheel explicitly indicates that these (108) phenomena from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects—<i>upon their being included</i> in the eighteen constituents—are <i>established by way of their own character</i>.</p>
3	<p>Tsong-kha-pa’s <i>The Essence of Eloquence</i> provides a source for the reasonableness of commenting on statements in the first wheel that phenomena are established by way of their own character as requiring interpretation when it says about establishment by way of its own character:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Statements that those two [that is, phenomenon-constituent and phenomenon-sense-sphere] are established by way of their own character without differentiating from among phenomena what does and does not exist by way of its own character also require interpretation.</p> <p>This is because permanent phenomena such as uncompounded space are included in the phenomenon-constituent and phenomenon-sense-sphere but are not established by way of their own character.</p>
4	<p>When teaching the mode of pronouncement in the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i>, there is a need for the Buddha to specify these phenomena ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment, seven groups of phenomena called the “seven pronouncements”—the aggregates, the sense-spheres, dependent-arising, the foods, the four noble truths, the constituents, and the harmonies with enlightenment. The need is to exclude the unique members of the list of 108 phenomena that are the ba-</p>

ses of exposition of the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras. Therefore, do not make the mistake of holding that these 108 phenomena are the basis of exposition of the first-wheel teaching.

3. *Also someone says:*<sup>a</sup> There is a way in which [Paramārthasamudgata] questions [the Teacher Buddha] because he asks this question:

In the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, the Supramundane Victor] said that phenomena ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are equally established by way of their own character; in the middle wheel as indicated here, [the Supramundane Victor] said that phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects are equally not established by way of their own character,

and so forth.

ཡང་ཁ་ཅིག ། གྲི་བ་ལྷུས་ཚུལ་ཡོད་དེ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་  
 དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་  
 རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས། བར་བར་  
 གཟུགས་ནས་<sup>[15a]</sup>རྣམ་མཁྱེན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས་ཞེས་སོགས་གྱི་གྲི་བ་  
 ལྷུས་ཟེར་ན།

*Comment:* The first step in Jam-yang-shay-pa's (and his predecessor Gung-ru Chö-jung's) opening the way to show that in the first wheel requiring interpretation "established by way of its own character" means "established by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness apprehending it," he makes the case that since many of the phenomena taught among the seven groups of phenomena called the "seven pronouncements"—the aggregates, the sense-spheres, dependent-arising, the foods, the four noble truths, the constituents, and the harmonies with enlightenment—are impermanent and therefore *are* indeed established

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 14b.6; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 11b.1; 2008 Taipei reprint, 19.12.



by way of their own character and hence do not require interpretation. So, any teaching that these are established by way of their own character could not be Buddha's referent when he says in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* that first wheel teachings require interpretation.

*Our response:* Well then, it [absurdly] follows that the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] are sūtras explicitly teaching that *phenomena* ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character because [according to you, your] way [Paramārthasamudgata] questions [the Teacher] is logically feasible.

འོ་ན་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཚྭ་གསུངས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་པར་ཐལ། རྗེ་བ་ལུས་ཚུལ་འཐད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

If you [incorrectly] accept [that this first wheel as indicated here are sūtras explicitly teaching that *phenomena* ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character], it [absurdly] follows that this [first wheel as indicated here] is a sūtra explicitly teaching that *compounded phenomena* ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character because you [incorrectly] accept [that this first wheel as indicated here are sūtras explicitly teaching that *phenomena* ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character].

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཚྭ་གསུངས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་པ་]འདོད་ཀྱ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེ་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཚྭ་གསུངས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་འདུས་བྱས་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཚྭ་གསུངས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་པ་]འདོད་ཀྱི་ཕྱིར།

ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

If you [incorrectly] accept that [the first wheel as indicated here are sūtras explicitly teaching that *compounded phenomena* ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character], then it [absurdly] follows that they are sūtras whose own explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally because you [incorrectly] accept [that the first wheel as indicated here are sūtras explicitly teaching that *compounded phenomena* ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character].

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་  
 འདུས་བྱས་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་  
 ཡིན་པ་]འདོད་ན། རང་གི་དངོས་བསྟན་སྐྱེ་ཇི་བཞིན་པར་ཁས་  
 ལེན་དུ་བྱང་བའི་མདོར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་གཟུགས་  
 ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་འདུས་བྱས་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

*Comment:*<sup>a</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung's and Jam-yang-shay-pa's basic argument is:

1. The Mind-Only School maintains that compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character.
2. Because the first-wheel sūtras explicitly teach that phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character, then since this list of phenomena includes both compounded (that is, impermanent) phenomena and uncompounded (permanent) phenomena, the first-wheel sūtras are sūtras explicitly teaching that **compounded phenomena** ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character.
3. Hence, it would absurdly be suitable to assert literally something that the first-wheel sūtras explicitly teach, namely, that compounded phenomena such as forms are established by

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 62.

way of their own character, and thus such a first-wheel sūtra would be a sūtra whose explicit teaching is suitable to be accepted literally.

4. However, according to the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* the first wheel requires interpretation—it is unacceptable literally.

Gung-ru Chō-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa do not establish here why in the Mind-Only School any impermanent phenomenon must be established by way of its own character, but this point is clearly expressed in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* itself. For, in explaining what is behind the teaching in the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras that phenomena are not produced, Buddha says that imputational natures cannot be produced by causes and conditions because they are not established by way of their own character, whereby it is clearly indicated that establishment by way of the object's own character is a prerequisite for the activity of production. The *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* says:<sup>a</sup>

Concerning that, thinking of just character-non-natures [that is, thinking of just imputational factors which are not established by way of their own character], I taught that all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, naturally thoroughly passed beyond sorrow.

Why? Paramārthasamudgata, it is thus: **That which does not exist by way of its own character** is not produced. That which is not produced does not cease. That which is not produced and does not cease is from the start quiescent. That which is quiescent from the start is naturally thoroughly passed beyond sorrow [that is, naturally devoid of the afflictive emotions without depending on an antidote]. That which is naturally thoroughly passed beyond sorrow does not have the least thing to pass beyond sorrow.

This statement is Gung-ru Chō-jung's and Jam-yang-shay-pa's source for their position that a sūtra explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character must be non-deceptive and therefore a literally acceptable sūtra. Consequently, they draw the conclusion that the term "own-character" that Paramārthasamudgata uses when describing the first-wheel teaching about all phenomena cannot mean "establishment

<sup>a</sup> Chap. 7; Lamotte, *Samdhinirmocana*, 67-68 [4], and 194; Dön-drub-gyal-tshan's *Four Intertwined Commentaries*, 7.1-7.2.

by way of their own character” but must mean “establishment by way of their own character **as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses**”—a status that the Mind-Only School refutes with respect to each and every phenomenon.

### Unpacking Debate 3 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa's Positions [46]

1	<p>Since the first wheel of the doctrine as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> is not suitable to be asserted literally, the first wheel as indicated here cannot be sūtras explicitly teaching that the <i>compounded phenomena</i> ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character. This is because compounded phenomena <b>are</b> established by way of their own character.</p>
2	<p>Therefore, since <i>compounded phenomena</i> are included among phenomena, it is wrong to claim that in the first part of Paramārthasamudgata's question to Buddha Paramārthasamudgata means:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">In the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i>, the Supramundane Victor said that <i>phenomena</i> ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are equally established by way of their own character.</p> <p>Rather, it means:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">In the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i>, the Supramundane Victor said that <i>phenomena</i> ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are equally established by way of their own character <b>as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses</b>.</p>

4. *Someone says*:<sup>a</sup> Here there is no entailment [namely, that **the first wheel as indicated here are sūtras explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character does not entail that the first wheel as indicated here are sūtras whose own explicit teaching is**

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 15a.3; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 11b.4; 2008 Taipei reprint, 19.20.

suitable to be asserted literally].

ཁ་ཅིག་། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་  
བར་གྱི་འདུས་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚེས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་  
པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་ན་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་རང་གི་དངོས་བསྟན་རྣམས་ཅི་བཞིན་  
པར་ཁས་ལེན་དུ་རུང་བའི་མདོ་ཡིན་པས་]འདིར་མ་ལྷུབ་ཟེར།

*Comment.*<sup>a</sup> Since in the Mind-Only School compounded phenomena are indeed established by way of their own character, why would anyone want to assert that a sūtra passage<sup>b</sup> presenting this correct position is not literal? Unlike Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa who say that in the context of the description in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* of the first-wheel teaching requiring interpretation “established by way of their own character” means “establishment by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses,” there are several prominent Ge-lug-pa scholars who hold that “established by way of their own character” means “established by way of their own character” but **also** indicates that these phenomena are “established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses.” In this way, they claim that they can hold that in the first wheel the teaching that compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character is nonliteral.

Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho,<sup>c</sup> explains that these scholars hold that the words “established by way of their own character” do not merely express what they seem to but **also** express “established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses.” This is held to be feasible since what terms express depends on the intention of the speaker and the mind-set of the listener (this type of explanation being how Gung-thang Kön-chog-tan-pay-drön-me limits the meaning of “established by way of their own character” **only** to “established by way

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, intro. to chap. 6 and Issue #31, 74-76.

<sup>b</sup> The term “sūtra” is used for both an entire text and a passage within such a text.

<sup>c</sup> Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho’s *Port of Entry*, 145.1-145.4 and 146.3-146.5.

of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness"). As the contemporary scholar Kön-chog-tshe-ring<sup>a</sup> of the Lo-sal-ling College, a follower of Paṅ-chen Sö-nam-drag-pa, clearly frames the issue:<sup>b</sup>

Even though it is suitable to assert that forms are established by way of their own character in accordance with the first-wheel teaching that forms are established by way of their own character, such a first-wheel passage is not asserted to be literally acceptable since it also teaches that forms are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses.

This explanation of a double message conveyed by the teaching of "own-character" allows room for making similarly sense of Jetsün Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan's clearly enunciated opinions that:

1. the "own-character" of Paramārthasamudgata's question means "established by way of its own character"
2. the first wheel teaches that compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character
3. what the first wheel teaches is not definitive.

The dual explanation is attractive in that it leaves Tsong-kha-pa's identification of "own-character" as "established by way of its own character" untouched while, by adding to its meaning, it avoids difficulties that Tsong-kha-pa's apparent identification entails. This reading seems benign, since it shies away from anything that looks like direct criticism of the founder of the sect; however, it has its own difficulties as Jam-yang-shay-pa will now explore.

*Our response:* It is not reasonable to accept [that **the first wheel as indicated here are sūtras whose own explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally**] because the first unit of the *Sūtra [Unraveling the Thought]* on the meaning established says:<sup>c</sup>

Furthermore, that wheel of doctrine turned [by the Supramundane Victor] is surpassable, affords an occasion [for refutation], requires interpretation, and serves as a basis for controversy.

<sup>a</sup> *dge bshes dkon mchog tshe ring*; oral communication.

<sup>b</sup> Recorded oral teaching.

<sup>c</sup> See Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 116.

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་རང་གི་དངོས་བསྟན་སྐྱ་ཇི་བཞིན་པར་ཁས་ལེན་དུ་  
 རུང་བའི་མདོ་ཡིན་པར་]འདོད་མི་རིགས་ཏེ། སྐབ་དོན་གྱི་མདོ་ཚན་  
 དང་པོ་ལས། ཚེས་ཀྱི་འཁོར་ལོ་བསྐྱར་བ་དེ་ཡང་སྐྱ་ན་མཚེས་བ་  
 སྐབས་མཚེས་པ། རུང་བའི་དོན་རྩོད་པའི་གཞིའི་གནས་སུ་སྐྱར་  
 པ་ལགས། ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར།

Regarding the place [where you asserted] no entailment, it follows that there is entailment [that is, if the first wheel as indicated here are sūtras explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character, then it must be that the first wheel as indicated here are sūtras whose own explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally] because whatever is a sūtra explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character also must be a literal sūtra, because a sūtra explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena are impermanent [must be a literal sūtra], because a sūtra explicitly teaching the sixteen [aspects of the four noble truths,] impermanence and so forth, [must be a literal sūtra].

མ་ཁྱབ་མཚམས་དེ་ལ་ [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་  
 རྩོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་འདུས་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚེས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་སྐབ་པར་  
 དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་ན་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེ་རང་གི་དངོས་  
 བསྟན་སྐྱ་ཇི་བཞིན་པར་ཁས་ལེན་དུ་རུང་བའི་མདོ་ཡིན་པས་]སྐབ་པ་ཡོད་པར་  
 ཐལ། འདུས་བྱས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་སྐབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་  
 བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་ན་སྐྱ་ཇི་བཞིན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་དགོས་པའི་  
 ཕྱིར་ཏེ། འདུས་བྱས་མི་རྟག་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ལ་ [སྐྱ་  
 ཇི་བཞིན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་དགོས་པ་]དེའི་ཕྱིར་ཏེ། མི་རྟག་སོགས་བཅུ་དྲུག་  
 དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ལ་ [སྐྱ་ཇི་བཞིན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་དགོས་པ་]དེའི་  
 ཕྱིར།

*Comment:*<sup>a</sup> Contrary to Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa, scholars such as Pal-jor-lhün-drub, Je-tsun Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan, and Paṅ-chen Sö-nam-drag-pa assert that the term “own-character” in Paramārthasamudgata’s question means “establishment of objects by way of their own character.” However, since all Gelug-pa scholars hold that in the Mind-Only School:

- what is literally unacceptable requires interpretation
- what is literally acceptable is definitive
- and all compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character

these scholars and their followers must struggle to keep from having to admit that a first-wheel sūtra explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character is a sūtra whose explicit teaching is suitable to be accepted literally. If they did, they would have to admit that a first-wheel sūtra is definitive, and this flies in the face of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*'s clear statement that first-wheel sūtras require interpretation.

To make their predicament super-clear, Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa make what in other circumstances would be the obvious point that sūtras teaching doctrines that accord with the fact are literally acceptable sūtras. This is how they rub it in, supporting each reason with its own evidence:

A first-wheel sūtra explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character is necessarily a sūtra whose explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally,

- because a sūtra that explicitly teaches that compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character is necessarily a sūtra whose explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally
- because a sūtra that explicitly teaches that compounded phenomena are impermanent is necessarily a sūtra whose explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally
- because a sūtra that explicitly teaches the sixteen attributes of the four noble truths is necessarily a sūtra whose explicit

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #28, 63-64.



teaching is suitable to be asserted literally

- because a sūtra that explicitly teaches the four noble truths is necessarily a sūtra whose explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally
- because a sūtra that explicitly teaches the four noble truths is non-deceptive with respect to the literal reading of its principal topics of explicit teaching<sup>a</sup>
- because a sūtra that explicitly teaches what is to be discarded and what is to be adopted with respect to the four truths (sufferings and their origins are to be discarded, and cessations and paths are to be adopted) is a correct, concordant example that possesses the reason and the predicate in a proof that a sūtra teaching very obscure topics is non-deceptive with respect to what it teaches by reason of the fact that it is a scripture devoid of contradiction.

It follows [that a sūtra explicitly teaching the sixteen aspects of the four noble truths, impermanence and so forth, must be a literal sūtra] because a sūtra explicitly teaching the four truths [must be a literal sūtra], because a sūtra that explicitly teaches what is to be discarded and what is to be adopted with respect to the four truths is a correct, concordant example that possesses the two—the reason and the predicate—in a proof that a sūtra teaching very hidden objects of comprehension is non-deceptive with respect to what it teaches by reason of the fact that it is a scripture purified by the three analyses [that is, devoid of contradiction],

[མི་རྟག་སོགས་བརྟུ་དྲུག་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ལ་སྦྱ་ཇི་བཞིན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་  
 དགོས་པ་]དེར་ཐལ། བདེན་བཞི་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ལ་[སྦྱ་ཇི་  
 བཞིན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་དགོས་པ་]དེའི་ཕྱིར་ཏེ། བདེན་བཞིའི་སྤང་དོར་  
 དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་དེ་དབྱུང་གསུམ་གྱིས་དག་པའི་ལྷང་གི་  
 རྟགས་གྱིས་<sup>[15b]</sup>གཞུག་བྱ་ཤིན་ཏུ་སྒྲིག་གྱུར་སྟོན་པའི་མདོ་རང་གི་  
 བསྟན་བྱའི་དོན་ལ་མི་བསྐྱུ་བར་སྐྱབ་པར་བྱེད་པའི་རྟགས་ཚོས་  
 གཉིས་ལྡན་གྱི་མཐུན་དཔེ་ཡང་དག་ཡིན་པའི་ཕྱིར།

<sup>a</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa (*Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*, 30.1/12b.6) omits this step from his cribbing of Gung-ru Chö-jung (*Garland of White Lotuses*, 6b.2) probably for the sake of economy of expression.

because Dharmakīrti's *Commentary on (Dignāga's) "Compilation of Valid Cognition"* says:<sup>a</sup>

Through thorough ascertainment of just these [teachings]  
 On adoption [of true cessations] and discarding [true sufferings]  
 as well as [their respective] methods [or causes, that is, true  
 paths and true origins of suffering respectively,  
 It is established by inference through the force of the object itself  
 that Buddha's word] is non-deceptive with respect to the prin-  
 cipal meaning [the four noble truths].  
 Therefore, [due to similarity] it is to be inferred that [Buddha's  
 word is non-deceptive] also with respect to other [very obscure  
 topics as well].

རྣམ་འགྲེལ་ལས། ལྷན་དང་དོར་བྱའི་དེ་ཉིད་ནི། །ཐབས་བཅས་  
 རབ་ཏུ་ངེས་པ་ཡིས། །གཙོ་བོའི་དོན་ལ་མི་སྦྱུའི་ཕྱིར། །གཞན་  
 ལའང་རྗེས་སུ་དཔག་པ་ཡིན། །ཞེས་དང་།

*Comment.*<sup>b</sup> Dharmakīrti is saying that through scriptural inference based on the logical sign, or reason, that a certain passage teaching very obscure objects of comprehension is devoid of contradiction, it can be concluded that the passage is non-deceptive with respect to what it teaches, just as Buddha's teaching on the four truths is non-deceptive. He cites the teaching on the four noble truths in the context of showing that certain of Buddha's teachings on very obscure topics<sup>c</sup> are also non-deceptive with respect to what they teach because of also being purified by way of three analyses in that (1) what they teach about manifest objects is not contradicted by direct perception, (2) what they teach about slightly obscure objects is not contradicted by usual inference (called inference by

<sup>a</sup> Translation by Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 64. Chapter 1, stanza 217 (Miyasaka's III.217, pp. 146-147): *heyopādeyatattvasya sopāyasya prasiddhitaḥ / pradhānārthāvisaṃvādād anumānaṃ paratra vā //*; the bracketed material in the last two lines is drawn from Khay-drub's commentary, 135b.6. The Dalai Lama cites the last two lines in his *The Buddhism of Tibet and The Key to the Middle Way* (London: George Allen and Unwin, 1975; reprint, Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion, 1987), 83.

<sup>b</sup> Quoting Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #28, 64-65.

<sup>c</sup> That is, very obscure objects of comprehension (*shin tu lkog gyur gyi gzhal bya/ gzhal bya shin tu lkog gyur*).

the power of the fact),<sup>a</sup> and (3) with respect to very obscure objects, inaccessible to either direct perception or usual inference, there are no internal contradictions within Buddha's teachings on those topics.

Because Dharmakīrti uses a sūtra explicitly teaching what is to be adopted and what is to be discarded in terms of the four noble truths as an instance of a sūtra that is **non-deceptive** with respect to what it teaches, it can be concluded that such a sūtra is suitable to be asserted **literally**. And, if non-deceptiveness is the criterion for the suitability of asserting a text literally, one cannot claim that a sūtra that explicitly teaches that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character is not necessarily a sūtra whose explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally.

and Āryadeva's *Four Hundred* says:<sup>b</sup>

Whoever has generated doubt  
Toward what is not obvious in Buddha's word,  
Will believe that only Buddha [is omniscient]  
Based on [his profound teaching of] emptiness.

བཞི་བརྒྱ་པ་ལས། མངས་རྒྱས་ཀྱིས་གསུང་སློབ་ཀྱིས་ལ། །གང་ཞིག་  
ཐེ་ཚོམ་སྐྱེ་འགྱུར་བ། །དེ་ཡིས་སྣང་བ་ཉིད་བཟུབ་ཏེ། །དེ་ཉིད་ལོ་  
ནར་ཡིད་ཆེས་བྱ། །ཞིས་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར།

*Comment:*<sup>c</sup> Āryadeva's point is that if Buddha is correct with respect to such a profound topic as emptiness, he must also be correct with respect to less profound but more obscure topics such as minute details of the cause and effects of actions, as long as what he says is not contradicted by any of the three types of analyses described above.

<sup>a</sup> *ngos stobs rjes dpag*.

<sup>b</sup> *bstan bcos bzhi brgya pa zhes bya ba'i tshig le'ur byas pa, catuḥśatakaśāstrakārikā*; Peking 5246, vol. 95; stanza 280 which occurs in Chapter 12; parenthetical additions are from Gyal-tshab's commentary, 90b.3-91a.2; see *Yogic Deeds of Bodhisattvas: Gyel-tsap on Āryadeva's Four Hundred*, commentary by Geshe Sonam Rinchen, translated and edited by Ruth Sonam (Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1994), 241-242.

<sup>c</sup> Quoting Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #28, 66.

The main point of these two passages is that the logical verifiability of Buddha's special cognition of the four truths and the verifiability of emptiness become the means of validating his teachings on topics inaccessible to such verification. The principle is that if he is right about such profound topics, he must be right about less profound, even though more inaccessible topics.

Moreover,<sup>a</sup> it [absurdly] follows that the **Paramārthasamudgata Chapter is not a sūtra of definitive meaning** because [according to you] it is not [a sūtra of definitive meaning] by reason of explicitly teaching within differentiating the true establishment and non-true establishment among the three natures. It [absurdly] follows [that the Chapter of Paramārthasamudgata is not a sūtra of definitive meaning by reason of explicitly teaching within differentiating the true establishment and non-true establishment among the three natures] because [according to you] a sūtra that explicitly teaches within differentiating the true establishment and non-true establishment among the three natures is not necessarily a sūtra of definitive meaning. It [absurdly] follows [that a sūtra that explicitly teaches within differentiating the true establishment and non-true establishment among the three natures is not necessarily a sūtra of definitive meaning] because [according to you] a sūtra that explicitly teaches that other-powered natures are established by way of their own character is not necessarily a sūtra of definitive meaning because [according to you] your mode of apprehending the boundaries of non-entailment is logically feasible.

གཞན་ཡང་དོན་དམ་ཡང་དག་འཕགས་ཀྱི་ལེན་ངེས་དོན་གྱི་  
 མདོ་མ་ཡིན་པར་ཐལ། དེ་མཚན་ཉིད་གསུམ་ལ་བདེན་པར་གྲུབ་  
 མ་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་པར་སྤེལ་ས་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་རྒྱ་མཚན་གྱིས་  
 མ་ཡིན་པའི་སྤྱིར། [དེ་མཚན་ཉིད་གསུམ་ལ་བདེན་པར་གྲུབ་མ་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་པར་  
 སྤེལ་ས་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་རྒྱ་མཚན་གྱིས་མ་ཡིན་པ་]དེར་ཐལ། མཚན་ཉིད་  
 གསུམ་ལ་བདེན་པར་གྲུབ་མ་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་པར་སྤེལ་ས་དངོས་སུ་  
 བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ལ་ངེས་དོན་གྱི་མདོས་མ་ཁྱབ་པའི་སྤྱིར། [མཚན་  
 ཉིད་གསུམ་ལ་བདེན་པར་གྲུབ་མ་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་པར་སྤེལ་ས་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་

a See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 68, 74, and also 84, Issue #28: "Does non-deceptiveness require being literally acceptable?"

ལ་ངེས་དོན་གྱི་མདོས་མ་བྱུང་པ་]དེར་ཐལ། གཞན་དབང་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་མདོ་ལ་[ངེས་དོན་གྱི་མདོས་  
 མ་བྱུང་པ་]དེའི་ཕྱིར་ཏེ། བྱུང་གྱི་མ་བྱུང་མཚམས་འཛིན་ཚུལ་འཐད་  
 པའི་ཕྱིར།

*Comment.*<sup>a</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa’s concern is with Paṅ-chen Sö-nam-drag-pa’s and Je-tsun Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan’s<sup>b</sup> insistence that the fact that such a first-wheel sūtra explicitly teaches that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character does not entail that it is a sūtra whose explicit teaching is suitable to be accepted literally even though the Mind-Only School asserts that compounded phenomena are indeed established this way. Due to this, Jam-yang-shay-pa draws the absurd consequence that the “Questions of Paramārthasamudgata Chapter” of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* could not be a sūtra of definitive meaning because it is universally accepted that in the Mind-Only School this chapter of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* is definitive because it divides phenomena into what are and are not established by way of their own character, showing that other-powered natures—that is, compounded phenomena—and thoroughly established natures—emptinesses—are established by way of their own character but that imputational natures are not established by way of their own character.

Jam-yang-shay-pa’s point is that once Paṅ-chen Sö-nam-drag-pa and Je-tsun Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan refuse to assert that a sūtra that explicitly teaches that other-powered natures are established by way of their own character is necessarily a sūtra of definitive meaning despite the fact that they admit that in this system other-powered natures are established this way, they must forego the assertion that a sūtra that differentiates between what is and is not established by way of its own character is necessarily a sūtra of definitive meaning, and hence they no longer have any way to determine a sūtra to be definitive, whereby they absurdly have to

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #28, 67-69.

<sup>b</sup> A-khu Lo-drö-gya-tsho (*Precious Lamp*, 66.1) identifies Jam-yang-shay-pa’s concern here as likely being with Je-tsun Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan.

give up holding that even this chapter of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* is definitive!

Wording in Gung-ru Chō-jung's more positive manner:<sup>a</sup>

A sūtra that explicitly teaches that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character is necessarily a sūtra whose explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally,

- because a sūtra that explicitly teaches that other-powered natures are established by way of their own character is necessarily a literally acceptable sūtra
- because a sūtra that explicitly teaches that other-powered natures and thoroughly established natures are established by way of their own character is necessarily a literally acceptable sūtra
- because a sūtra that explicitly teaches that other-powered natures and thoroughly established natures are established by way of their own character and that imputational natures are not established by way of their own character is necessarily a literally acceptable sūtra
- because a sūtra that differentiates well the three natures with respect to whether they are truly established or not is necessarily a literally acceptable sūtra
- because the "Questions of Paramārthasamudgata Chapter" is posited as a sūtra of definitive meaning from the viewpoint of its being a sūtra that explicitly teaches within differentiating well whether the three natures are truly established or not.

Once the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* is considered to be definitive because it explains that other-powered natures and thoroughly established natures are established by way of their own character and that imputational natures are not, it is indeed natural to consider that a sūtra that teaches that compounded phenomena (other-powered natures) are established by way of their own character is also definitive. Again, the principle is that what is non-deceptive is literally acceptable and hence definitive.

<sup>a</sup> Gung-ru Chō-jung's *Garland of White Lotuses*, 7a.1-7a.4.

Moreover,<sup>a</sup> it [absurdly] follows that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character is a meaning of the literal rendering of first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] that is literal [and thus to be interpreted] because [according to you] your way [Paramārthasamudgata] questions [the Teacher] is logically feasible. If you [incorrectly] accept [that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character is a meaning of the literal rendering of first wheel as indicated here in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* that is literal], then it [absurdly] follows that [the reasoning in Asaṅga's *Summary of the Great Vehicle*]:<sup>b</sup>

Because an awareness does not exist prior to name,  
 Because manifold, and because unrestricted,  
 There are the contradictions of being in the essence of that, of  
 many entities,  
 And of the mixture of entities. Therefore, it is proven.

refutes that those [compounded phenomena] are established by way of their own character<sup>c</sup> because (1) you have [incorrectly] accepted [that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character is a meaning of the literal rendering of first wheel as indicated here in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* that is literal] and (2) this scriptural passage [“Because an awareness does not exist prior to name,” and so forth] is text demonstrating damage to the literality of the literal rendering of the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*]. If you [incorrectly] accept [that the passage, “Because an awareness does not exist prior to name,” and so forth refutes that those compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character], it very absurdly follows that compounded phenomena are not established by way of their own character!

གཞན་ཡང་། གཞུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་

<sup>a</sup> See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 63, 75.

<sup>b</sup> This reasoning refutes the acceptability of the literal rendering of the first-wheel sūtras; see Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 208.

<sup>c</sup> According to Jam-yang-shay-pa this reasoning shows that objects are not established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective terms and conceptual consciousnesses.

འདུས་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚེས་རྒྱམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་  
 འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་སྐྱས་ཟེན་སྐྱ་ཇི་བཞིན་པའི་དོན་  
 ཡིན་པར་ཐལ། ལྷོད་ཀྱི་དྲི་བ་ལུས་ཚུལ་འཐད་པའི་ཕྱིར། [གཟུགས་  
 རས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་འདུས་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚེས་རྒྱམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་སྐྱས་ཟེན་སྐྱ་ཇི་བཞིན་པའི་དོན་ཡིན་  
 པ་]འདོད་ན། མིང་གི་སྲ་རོལ་སློ་མེད་ཕྱིར། ཞེས་སོགས་ཀྱིས་[འདུས་  
 བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚེས་]དེ་རྒྱམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་བཀག་  
 པར་ཐལ།<sup>[16a]</sup> [གཟུགས་རས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་འདུས་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚེས་  
 རྒྱམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་སྐྱས་ཟེན་སྐྱ་  
 ཇི་བཞིན་པའི་དོན་ཡིན་པ་]འདོད་པ་གང་ཞེས། [མིང་གི་སྲ་རོལ་སློ་མེད་ཕྱིར།  
 ཞེས་སོགས་]ལུང་འདི་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོའི་སྐྱས་ཟེན་སྐྱ་  
 ཇི་བཞིན་པ་ལ་གཞོན་བྱེད་སྟོན་པའི་གཞུང་ཡིན་པའི་ཕྱིར། [མིང་  
 གི་སྲ་རོལ་སློ་མེད་ཕྱིར། ཞེས་སོགས་ཀྱིས་འདུས་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚེས་དེ་རྒྱམས་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་བཀག་པ་]འདོད་ན། འདུས་བྱས་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པར་ཐལ་ལོ།

*Comment:*<sup>a</sup> With commentary, <sup>b</sup> Asaṅga’s stanza reads:

There are the contradictions that if a bulbous flat-bottomed thing able to hold fluid, for instance, were established through the force of its own mode of subsistence as the referent of the verbal convention “pot”:

1. the imputational nature would exist in the essence of that bulbous thing because an awareness of the name of an object would have to exist prior to learning its name;
2. one object that has many names would have to be many

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 324-325; the final paragraph is drawn from Issue #28, 69.

<sup>b</sup> Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 324.



- entities because many names are used for one object; and
3. the entities of many objects that have the same name would be mixed because a name is not restricted to one object.

Therefore, it is proven [that objects are not established by way of their own character as the referents of terms and conceptual consciousnesses].

***The first reasoning.*** The most common example in philosophical treatises is a pot—which is defined as that which has a bulbous belly, a flat bottom, and is capable of holding fluid. If this bulbous thing’s being a foundation of a term such as “pot” were established by way of the bulbous thing’s own mode of subsistence, its being such a foundation would not depend upon language, and thus an awareness thinking “pot” with respect to it absurdly would be generated just through seeing it, prior to learning its name.

***The second reasoning.*** If a person’s being the referent of names is established right in the mode of being of the person, the usage of many names—such as Shakra, Indra, Grāmaghātaka, and so forth—for one god, the Lord of the Heaven of the Thirty-Three, must be by way of the force of the god himself since this god is established by way of his own character as the referent of those names. In that case, the one god absurdly would be several gods.

***The third reasoning.*** If a person’s being the referent of names is established right in the mode of being of the person, the usage of one name for two persons—two different people called Upagupta, for instance—would mean that the two persons absurdly would be just one person.

The conclusion drawn from these three fallacies is that objects are not established by way of their own character as the objects verbalized by their respective terms and as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses. Even babies, animals, and so forth—who do not know language and thus do not know specific terms for articles such as pots—nevertheless have awarenesses conceiving that pots and so forth are established by way of their own character as foundations of thoughts about them, and thus the same reasoning is applicable.

Through this reasoning Asaṅga refutes the acceptability of the literal rendering of the first-wheel sūtras, and if a meaning of the literal rendering of the first-wheel sūtras were that compounded

phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character, Aśaṅga absurdly would be refuting that compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character, in which case it would absurdly have to be said that in the Mind-Only School compounded phenomena are not established by way of their own character.

Moreover, it [absurdly] follows that the five aggregates' establishment by way of their own character is the own-character pronounced<sup>a</sup> as being established with the five aggregates on the occasion of the statement, "The Supramundane Victor pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates,"<sup>b</sup> because [according to you, your] way [Paramārthasamudgata] questions [the Teacher] about the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] is logically feasible. If you [incorrectly] accept [that the five aggregates' establishment by way of their own character is the own-character pronounced as being established with the five aggregates on the occasion of the statement, "The Supramundane Victor pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates,"] it [absurdly] follows that the five aggregates' establishment by way of their own character is the nonexistent nature of character mentioned on the occasion of [the Buddha's rhetorical question], "Concerning that, what are character-non-natures of phenomena?" because you [incorrectly] accepted [that the five aggregates' establishment by way of their own character is the own-character pronounced as being established with the five aggregates on the occasion of the statement, "The Supramundane Victor pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates,"] and the literal readings of the two—this sūtra passage ["Concerning that, what are character-non-natures of phenomena?" that is, phenomena's absence of establishment by way of their own character as the referents of their respective terms and conceptual consciousnesses] and the first wheel explicitly indicated on the occasion of "pronounced the own-character of the aggregates" [that is, the aggregates' establishment by way of their own character as the referents of their respective terms and conceptual consciousnesses] are contradictory because the sūtra passage later [in Buddha's rhetorical question] is a sūtra passage demonstrating damage to the literal reading of the literal rendering of the first wheel indicated on the occasion of the earlier sūtra passage [in Paramārthasamudgata's question].

<sup>a</sup> Or: announced, declared.

<sup>b</sup> See Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 76.

གཞན་ཡང་། སྤང་པོ་ལྔ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་  
 བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་སྤང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་  
 གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་སྐབས་ཀྱི་སྤང་པོ་ལྔའི་  
 རྩེད་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་བཀའ་སྡུལ་པའི་རང་མཚན་ཡིན་པར་ཐལ།  
 འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་ལ་དྲི་བ་ཞུས་ཚུལ་འཐད་པའི་  
 ཕྱིར། [སྤང་པོ་ལྔ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་  
 གྲངས་དུ་མར་སྤང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་སྐབས་  
 ཀྱི་སྤང་པོ་ལྔའི་རྩེད་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་བཀའ་སྡུལ་པའི་རང་མཚན་ཡིན་པ་]འདོད་ན།  
 སྤང་པོ་ལྔ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ། དེ་ལ་ཚོས་རྣམས་  
 ཀྱི་མཚན་ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་པ་ཉིད་གང་ཞེ་ན། ཞེས་པའི་  
 སྐབས་ཀྱི་མེད་རྒྱུའི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱི་ངོ་བོ་ཡིན་པར་ཐལ། [སྤང་པོ་ལྔ་  
 རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་སྤང་པོ་  
 རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་སྐབས་ཀྱི་སྤང་པོ་ལྔའི་རྩེད་དུ་  
 གྲུབ་པར་བཀའ་སྡུལ་པའི་རང་མཚན་ཡིན་པ་]འདོད་པ་གང་ཞིག་མདོ་  
 འདི་དང་སྤང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་  
 ཞེས་པའི་སྐབས་ནས་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་  
 གཉིས་ཀྱི་སྐྱས་ཟེན་སྐྱ་ཇི་བཞིན་པ་འགལ་བའི་ཕྱིར། མདོ་ཕྱི་མ་  
 [དེ་ལ་ཚོས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་མཚན་ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་པ་ཉིད་གང་ཞེ་ན། ཞེས་པ་]འདི་  
 མདོ་ལྔ་མ་[སྤང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པ་]འི་  
 སྐབས་ནས་བསྟན་པའི་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོའི་སྐྱས་ཟེན་སྐྱ་ཇི་བཞིན་  
 པ་ལ་གཞོན་བྱེད་སྟོན་པའི་མདོ་ཡིན་པའི་ཕྱིར།

It is not reasonable to accept [that the five aggregates' establishment by way of their own character is the nonexistent nature of character mentioned on the occasion of [the Buddha's rhetorical question], "Concerning that, what are character-non-natures of phenomena?"] because the distinction—that although it is reasonable to take the five aggregates' establishment by way of their own character as the nonexistent nature of character mentioned on this occasion [of (the Buddha's rhetorical question), "Concerning that, what are character-non-natures of phenomena?"], it is not reasonable to take the five aggregates' establishment by way of their own character that way—is logically feasible. For, Tsong-kha-pa's *The Essence of Eloquence* says:<sup>a</sup>

Concerning that, what are character-non-natures of phenomena?  
Those which are imputational characters.

*Comment.*<sup>b</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung's<sup>c</sup> and Jam-yang-shay-pa's<sup>d</sup> next reasoning is literary in nature. In answering Paramārthasamudgata's question, Buddha asks a rhetorical question and answers it:<sup>e</sup>

Paramārthasamudgata, concerning that, what are character-non-natures of phenomena? [That is, what are natureless in terms of being established by way of their own character?] Those which are imputational characters.

Why? It is thus: Those [imputational characters] are characters posited by names and terminology and do not subsist by way of their own character. Therefore, they are said to be "character-non-natures."

If in the first wheel, when Buddha speaks of the "own-character" of the five aggregates, he were speaking of the aggregates as being established by way of their own character as Je-tsun Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan and Paṅ-chen Sö-nam-drag-pa claim he is, then it would absurdly come to be that here in his answer the establishment of the mental and physical aggregates by way of their own character would be the character-nature that is non-existent!

Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa's point is that this

<sup>a</sup> See Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 86.

<sup>b</sup> c28, 70.

<sup>c</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung's *Garland of White Lotus*, 7b.1-7b.6.

<sup>d</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa's *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*, 31.3-32.3.

<sup>e</sup> Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 86.

passage speaking of the character-non-nature demonstrates damage to the acceptability of the literal rendering of the first-wheel sūtras mentioned earlier by Paramārthasamudgata, and thus the literal meanings of the two passages must be contradictory. For the latter to damage the former, the “character-nature” of the latter (Buddha’s answer) and the “own-character” of the former (Paramārthasamudgata’s question) must mean the same thing. However, “character-non-nature” cannot refer to the five aggregates’ not being established by way of their own character simply because there is no argument that in the Mind-Only School they **are** established by way of their own character. Therefore, according to Gung-ru Chō-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa, the “character-nature” that is said to be non-existent in the latter passage is the establishment of objects by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses,<sup>a</sup> and hence, the “own-character” mentioned in Paramārthasamudgata’s question must also be the same.

and:<sup>b</sup>

The rest of it indicates the mode of imputation. The imputation as, “This is a form aggregate,” is the mode of imputation of an entity, and the imputation as “[This] is the production of a form aggregate,” and so forth is the mode of imputation of particulars, or attributes.

*Comment:* In the wheel of doctrine of the four truths, Buddha spoke of the **entities** of the four truths as being established by way of their own character as a referent of a conceptual consciousness. He also spoke of an **attribute** of each the four respectively—**thorough knowledge** of true sufferings as impermanent and miserable, **abandonment** of the sources of suffering (contaminated actions and afflictive emotions), **actualization** of the true cessation of contaminated actions and afflictive emotions and thereby of suffering, and **meditation** cultivating true paths which are the means for attaining true cessation of suffering and its causes. This

<sup>a</sup> In an aside, Jam-yang-shay-pa (*Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*, 32.4) says that the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* at the point at which it is **reporting** this teaching in sūtras of the first wheel is (of course!) not itself **teaching** (*bstan*) that objects are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses, for the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* itself teaches exactly the opposite.

<sup>b</sup> See Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 104.

teaching occurs in the *Sūtra of Renunciation* at the point of turning the wheel of doctrine of the four truths for the five good ascetics.<sup>a</sup> In the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* Paramārthasamudgata refers to this teaching, saying:

The Supramundane Victor also pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the truths as well as speaking of [their] thorough knowledge, abandonment, actualization, and meditation.

Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho<sup>b</sup> raises the interesting question of whether such a sūtra teaching the four noble truths is deceptive with respect to the meaning that it teaches<sup>c</sup> because it teaches that the four truths are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses, whereas they are not. Since it would be uncomfortable to hold that a sūtra teaching the four truths is deceptive, he resolves the issue by saying that positing a teaching as being deceptive or not about the meaning that it teaches concerns its **main** topic, which in this case is the four truths. Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho's solution is:

1. to admit that the first wheel teaches the actual four noble truths both **mainly** and **explicitly**
2. but to hold that **on the literal level** it teaches the four truths to be established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses.

He uses the tack of splitting the explicit teaching from the literal reading so as to avoid having to hold that anything the first wheel teaches on the literal level can be taken literally and hence would have to be definitive. For if anything on the literal level of the first wheel were definitive, this would contradict the statement in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* that the first wheel is not definitive and requires interpretation. In this way, a sūtra teaching the four noble truths is non-deceptive about the meaning that it teaches. This distinction preserves the basic validity of the teachings of such sūtras and yet allows that the ontological status being taught

<sup>a</sup> Gung-thang (*Difficult Points*, 77.3-77.5) points out that some histories and so forth refer to this teaching as the *Wheel of Doctrine Sūtra* (*chos kyi 'khor lo'i mdo*) but that in fact the latter is only an extract from the *Renunciation Sūtra*.

<sup>b</sup> Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho's *Port of Entry*, 156.3-156.6.

<sup>c</sup> *rang gi bstan don la slu ba*.

with respect to these topics is entirely unfounded.

[ཡུང་པོ་ལྔ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ། དེ་ལ་ཚོས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་མཚན་ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་  
 ཉིད་མེད་པ་ཉིད་གང་ཞེ་ན། ཞེས་པའི་སྐབས་ཀྱི་མེད་རྒྱུའི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱི་ངོ་བོ་ཡིན་  
 པར་]འདོད་མི་རིགས་ཏེ། ཡུང་པོ་ལྔ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་  
 གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་[དེ་ལ་ཚོས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་པ་ཉིད་གང་ཞེ་ན། ཞེས་པའི་]སྐབས་འདིའི་མེད་རྒྱུའི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱི་ངོ་བོ་ལ་བྱེད་རིགས་ཀྱང་ཡུང་པོ་ལྔ་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་ལྟར་མི་བྱེད་པའི་བྱེད་པར་འཐད་པའི་ཕྱིར།  
 འདི་ཉིད་ལས། <sup>[16b]</sup>མེད་རྒྱུའི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱི་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་ནི་རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའམ་གནས་པ་ལ་བྱའོ། །ཞེས་དང་། དེ་  
 མན་ཚད་ཀྱིས་ཀུན་ཏུ་བཏགས་ཚུལ་སྟོན་ཏེ་འདི་གཟུགས་ཡུང་ངོ་  
 ཞེས་ངོ་བོར་དང་གཟུགས་ཡུང་སྟེ། །ཞེས་སོགས་སུ་བཏགས་པ་  
 བྱི་བྱེ་བྲག་གམ་བྱེད་པར་ཏུ་བཏགས་ཚུལ་ཡིན་ཏེ། ཞེས་གསུངས་  
 པའི་ཕྱིར།

<b>Unpacking Debate 4 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa’s Positions [50]</b>	
1	If it were that the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> are sūtras explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character, then this would entail that the first wheel as indicated here are sūtras whose own explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally.
2	For, it is not reasonable to accept that the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> are sūtras whose own explicit teaching is suitable to be asserted literally because the first unit of the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> on the meaning established says:

	<p>Furthermore, that wheel of doctrine turned by the Supramundane Victor is surpassable, affords an occasion for refutation, requires interpretation, and serves as a basis for controversy.</p>
3	<p>Therefore:</p> <p>Whatever is a sūtra explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena are established by way of their own character must be a literal sūtra.</p> <p>A sūtra explicitly teaching that compounded phenomena are impermanent must be a literal sūtra.</p> <p>A sūtra explicitly teaching the sixteen aspects of the four noble truths, impermanence and so forth, must be a literal sūtra.</p> <p>A sūtra explicitly teaching the four truths must be a literal sūtra.</p> <p>A sūtra that explicitly teaches what is to be discarded and what is to be adopted with respect to the four truths is a correct, concordant example that possesses the two—the reason and the predicate—in a proof that a sūtra teaching very hidden objects of comprehension is non-deceptive with respect to what it teaches by reason of the fact that it is a scripture purified by the three analyses [that is, devoid of contradiction].</p>
4	<p>A third-wheel sūtra such as the Paramārthasamudgata Chapter is a sūtra of definitive meaning by reason of explicitly teaching within differentiating the true establishment and absence of true establishment among the three natures.</p>
5	<p>A sūtra that explicitly teaches that other-powered natures are established by way of their own character is necessarily a sūtra of definitive meaning.</p>
6	<p>That compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character is not a meaning of the literal rendering of first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> that is literal [and hence it must be interpreted]</p>
7	<p>The reasoning in Asaṅga's <i>Summary of the Great Vehicle</i>:</p> <p>Because an awareness does not exist prior to name,</p>



	<p>Because manifold, and because unrestricted,          There are the contradictions of being in the essence of          that, of many entities,          And of the mixture of entities. Therefore, it is proven.</p> <p>does not refute that compounded phenomena are established by          way of their own character.</p>
8	<p>This scriptural passage, “Because an awareness does not exist          prior to name,” and so forth is text demonstrating damage to          the literality of the literal rendering of the first wheel as indi-          cated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i>.</p>
9	<p>According to the Mind-Only School, compounded phenomena          are established by way of their own character.</p>
10	<p>The five aggregates’ establishment by way of their own char-          acter is not the own-character pronounced as being established          with the five aggregates on the occasion of the statement, “The          Supramundane Victor pronounced, in many ways, the own-          character of the aggregates.”</p>
11	<p>The five aggregates’ establishment by way of their own char-          acter is not the nonexistent nature of character mentioned on          the occasion of [the Buddha’s rhetorical question], “Concern-          ing that, what are character-non-natures of phenomena?”</p>
12	<p>The literal readings of the two—this later sūtra passage[in          Buddha’s rhetorical question], “Concerning that, what are          character-non-natures of phenomena?” that is, phenomena’s  <i>absence of</i> establishment by way of their own character as the          referents of their respective terms and conceptual conscio-          usnesses and the first wheel explicitly indicated on the occasion          of the earlier sūtra passage [in Paramārthasamudgata’s ques-          tion] “spoke of the own-character of the aggregates” [that is,          the aggregates’ establishment by way of their own character as          the referents of their respective terms and conceptual con-          sciousnesses] are contradictory.</p>
13	<p>The sūtra passage later [in Buddha’s rhetorical question] is a          sūtra passage demonstrating damage to taking literally the lit-          eral rendering of the first wheel indicated on the occasion of          the earlier sūtra passage [in Paramārthasamudgata’s question].</p>

5. *Also, someone says:*<sup>a</sup> It follows that this sūtra passage,<sup>b</sup> “The Supramundane Victor also pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates,” explicitly indicates that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them because it is reasonable to take the “own-character” that is part of phrase “pronounced also own-character” as “established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them.”

ཡང་ཁ་ཅིག །། བཅོམ་ལྷན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་སྤང་པོ་  
 རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་མདོ་  
 འདིས་སྤང་པོ་ལྷ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་ཀྱུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བཟླན་པར་ཐལ། རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་ཚིག་བྱུར་གྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 དེ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་ཀྱུབ་  
 པ་ལ་བྱེད་རིགས་པའི་བྱུར་ན་

*Our response:* [That it is reasonable to take the “own-character” that is part of phrase “pronounced also own-character” as “established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them”] does not entail [that this sūtra passage, “The Supramundane Victor also pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates,” explicitly indicates that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them].

[རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་ཚིག་བྱུར་གྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དེ་རང་  
 འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་ཀྱུབ་པ་ལ་བྱེད་རིགས་ན་བཅོམ་  
 ལྷན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་སྤང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་  
 སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་མདོ་འདིས་སྤང་པོ་ལྷ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་ཀྱུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བཟླན་པས་]མ་ཁྱབ།

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 16b.2; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 12b.5; 2008 Taipei reprint, 21.18.

<sup>b</sup> See Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 76.

You cannot accept [that **this sūtra passage explicitly indicates that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them**] because this sūtra passage [“The Supramundane Victor also pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates”] does not indicate such [that is, it does not explicitly indicate that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them]. It follows [that this sūtra passage (“The Supramundane Victor also pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates”) does not explicitly indicate that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them] because the distinction is logically feasible that:

- while **this [sūtra passage** (“also pronounced the own-character of the aggregates”) **does not indicate** such [that is, does not explicitly indicate that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them],
- **the first wheel indicated here** [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] when teaching on this occasion [of “also pronounced the own-character of the aggregates” **does indicate** such [that is, does explicitly indicate that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them].

It follows [that while **this sūtra passage** (“also pronounced the own-character of the aggregates”) **does not indicate** such, **the first wheel indicated here** on this occasion (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* of “also pronounced the own-character of the aggregates”) **does indicate** such] because “pronounced” (*bka’stsal*) indicates “spoken there in that first wheel indicated here,” [simply] because there is a meaning of “pronounced.”

[མདོ་འདིས་སྤང་པོ་ལྷ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པ་]འདོད་མི་རུས་ཏེ། [བཙམ་ལྷན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་སྤང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྣུལ་ཞེས་པའི་]མདོ་འདིས་[སྤང་པོ་ལྷ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་]དེ་ལྷར་མ་བསྟན་པའི་ཕྱིར། [བཙམ་ལྷན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་

བྲངས་དུ་མར་ཕྱང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་]མདོ་  
 འདིས་[ཕྱང་པོ་ལྔ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 པར་དངོས་སུ་མ་བསྟན་པ་]དེར་ཐལ། [ཕྱང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་  
 བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་མདོ་]འདིས་[ཕྱང་པོ་ལྔ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་  
 གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་]དེ་ལྟར་མ་བསྟན་པར་[ཕྱང་པོ་རྣམས་  
 ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པ་]འདིའི་སྐབས་ནས་བསྟན་  
 པའི་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོས་[ཕྱང་པོ་ལྔ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་  
 ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་]དེ་ལྟར་བསྟན་པའི་  
 བྱུང་པར་འཐད་པའི་ཕྱིར། [འདིས་དེ་ལྟར་མ་བསྟན་པར་འདིའི་སྐབས་ནས་  
 བསྟན་པའི་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོས་དེ་ལྟར་བསྟན་པ་]དེར་ཐལ། བཀའ་  
 སྡུལ་ཞེས་པ་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་དེར་བཀའ་སྡུལ་བ་  
 དེ་སྟོན་པ་ཡིན་པའི་ཕྱིར་ཏེ། བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན་ཞིག་ཡོད་  
 པའི་ཕྱིར།

*Comment.*<sup>a</sup> Many subtle distinctions about what was **said** in the first wheel as indicated here in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* must be made. According to Gung-ru Chö-jung,<sup>b</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa,<sup>c</sup> and A-khu Lo-drö-gya-tsho,<sup>d</sup> when Paramārthasamudgata says, “The Supramundane Victor pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates,” Paramārthasamudgata is saying only that Buddha **pronounced the words of sūtra**,<sup>e</sup> “The aggregates are established by way of their own character.” However, Buddha did not **say**<sup>f</sup> that the aggregates are established by way of

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #45, 102-103.

<sup>b</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung’s *Garland of White Lotus*, 15a.6-15b.2.

<sup>c</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa’s *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*,” 40.3-41.1.

<sup>d</sup> A-ku Lo-drö-gya-tsho’s *Precious Lamp*, 61.1-63.4.

<sup>e</sup> *ces pa’i mdo tshig bka’ stsal pa*.

<sup>f</sup> *gsungs pa*.

their own character; nor did he **teach**<sup>a</sup> that the aggregates are established by way of their own character; nor did he even say (in quotes), “The aggregates are established by way of their own character,” since that would constitute his saying and teaching such. For, as explained above, if Buddha pronounced in the first wheel that the aggregates are established by way of their own character, such would be literally acceptable. He merely pronounced **the words of sūtra**, “The aggregates are established by way of their own character.”

Jam-yang-shay-pa<sup>b</sup> addresses the issue through raising a parallel concern from another context: If the mere pronouncement of sūtra words entails the pronouncement of sūtra words **teaching** such, then the *Heart of Wisdom Sūtra* would absurdly teach that forms and so forth do not exist since it contains the sūtra words, “Form does not exist,” and so forth. Jam-yang-shay-pa’s cogent point is that although the *Heart of Wisdom Sūtra* has such words, it does not pronounce, say, or teach that forms do not exist because there simply is no purpose in teaching that forms do not exist. As the late Ge-dün-lo-drö of Go-mang College said, there is no trainee for the teaching that forms do not exist, and hence Buddha never taught such, even though those words are present in sūtras. The context must be taken into account, either as provided by other passages that specify a status of objects—such as inherent existence—as not existing or as provided by considering Buddha’s intent and his listeners’ mind-set. Early in the *Heart of Wisdom Sūtra* itself, Avalokiteshvara says, “Forms are to be viewed as empty of **inherent** existence,” and hence the qualification “inherently” must be carried over to all the other negations.

The conclusion is that in the first wheel Buddha taught and said, relative to certain trainees, that phenomena are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses despite the admitted fact that those very words, or anything resembling them, appear nowhere in such sūtras. A-khu Lo-drö-gya-tsho<sup>c</sup> makes the further distinction that Buddha even **spoke** the words of sūtra, “Phenomena are established by way of

<sup>a</sup> *bstan pa*.

<sup>b</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa’s *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*, 40.5.

<sup>c</sup> A-ku Lo-drö-gya-tso’s *Precious Lamp*, 62.4–62.6. He appears to be following Jam-yang-shay-pa’s *Brief Decisive Analysis*, 492.4–493.3.

their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses,” his point undoubtedly being that if Buddha explicitly teaches such on the literal level, he must say it. Indeed, this must be understood within the context of Gung-thang’s brilliant discussion of Buddha’s intention to teach such and the mind-set of his listeners, since, as A-khu Lo-drö-gya-tsho himself admits, such “does not emerge [that is, appear] in words.”<sup>a</sup> It indeed makes sense that since such is held to be communicated on the literal level, it is also spoken.

Moreover, it follows that “pronounced” (*bka' stsal*) is to be taken as the mode of pronouncement here [in the Paramārthasamudgata Chapter] in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* because you accept [that this sūtra passage—“The Supramundane Victor pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates”—explicitly indicates that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses].<sup>b</sup> If you accept [that “pronounced” (*bka' stsal*) is to be taken as the mode of pronouncement here (in the Paramārthasamudgata Chapter) in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] it follows that the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* is a sūtra of interpretable meaning because you [correctly] accepted [that “pronounced” (*bka' stsal*) is to be taken as the mode of pronouncement here (in the Paramārthasamudgata Chapter) in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*]. [Extrapolate] in this way for later lines [of the text]; enough elaboration.

གཞན་ཡང་། བཀའ་སྩལ་ཞེས་པ་དེ་དགོངས་འབྲེལ་འདིར་  
 བཀའ་སྩལ་ཚུལ་ལ་བྱེད་པར་ཐལ། [བཅོམ་ལྷན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་  
 མར་ལུང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྩལ་ཞེས་པའི་མདོ་འདིས་ལུང་  
 པོ་ལྷ་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་  
 བསྟན་པར་]འདོད་པའི་བྱིར། [བཀའ་སྩལ་ཞེས་པ་དེ་དགོངས་  
 འབྲེལ་འདིར་བཀའ་སྩལ་ཚུལ་ལ་བྱེད་པ་]འདོད་ན། དགོངས་  
 འབྲེལ་དང་དོན་གྱི་མདོར་ཐལ། [བཀའ་སྩལ་ཞེས་པ་དེ་དགོངས་

<sup>a</sup> *Precious Lamp*, 55.6: 'dir dngos su bstan pa'i 'khor lo dang po rnamas kyi tshig la rang 'dzin rtog pa'i zhen gzhir rang mtshan gyis grub pa ma thon kyang.

<sup>b</sup> The identification of this reason clause is doubtful.

འགྲེལ་འདིར་བཀའ་སྐྱེལ་ཚུལ་ལ་བྱེད་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར། དེ་  
བཞིན་དུ་ཚོགས་རྒྱུ་མ་རྣམས་ལ་སྐྱོས་པས་ཚོགས་གོ།

Unpacking Debate 5 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa's Positions [72]	
1	This sūtra passage, “The Supramundane Victor also pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates,” does not explicitly indicate that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them.
2	It is reasonable to take the “own-character” that is part of phrase “pronounced also own-character” as “established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them.”
3	That it is reasonable to take the “own-character” that is part of phrase “pronounced also own-character” as “established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them” does not entail that this sūtra passage, “The Supramundane Victor also pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates,” explicitly indicates that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them.
4	This sūtra passage [“The Supramundane Victor also pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates”] does not explicitly indicate that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them.
5	The distinction is logically feasible that while <b>this sūtra passage</b> (“also pronounced the own-character of the aggregates”) <b>does not indicate</b> , that is, does not explicitly indicate, that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them, <b>the first wheel indicated here</b> in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> when teaching on this occasion of “also pronounced the own-character of the aggregates” <b>does indicate</b> , that is, does explicitly indicate, that the five aggregates are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them.

6	“Pronounced” ( <i>bka’stsal</i> ) indicates “pronounced there in that first wheel indicated here,” [simply] because there is a meaning of “pronounced.”
7	“Pronounced” ( <i>bka’stsal</i> ) is to be taken as the mode of pronouncement here in the Paramārthasamudgata Chapter in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> , due to which the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> is a sūtra of interpretable meaning.

**6. Also someone says:**<sup>a</sup> It follows that in first wheel sūtras as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] it is explicitly taught that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character because in middle wheel sūtras as indicated here it is explicitly taught that all phenomena ranging from forms to omniscient consciousness equally are not established by way of their own character. It follows [that in middle wheel sūtras as indicated here it is explicitly taught that all phenomena ranging from forms to omniscient consciousness equally are not established by way of their own character] because *The Essence of Eloquence* says:<sup>b</sup>

The bases being posited as interpretable or definitive are the three—the statements [in the first wheel] that phenomena equally have nature in the sense of being established by way of their own character, the statements [in the middle wheel] that phenomena equally do not have such, and the good differentiation [in the final wheel] of those [phenomena] that have [such establishment] and those that do not.

ཡང་ཁོ་ན་རེ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་  
 [17a]བྱང་ཕྱོགས་ཀྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་  
 གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པར་ཐལ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་བར་  
 པར་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཁྱེན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་མཉམ་དུ་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པའི་ཕྱིར།  
 [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་བར་པར་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཁྱེན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 16b.6; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 13a.2; 2008 Taipei reprint, 22.10.

<sup>b</sup> Translation taken from Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 127.



རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་མཉམ་དུ་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པ་]དེར་ཐལ། འདི་  
 ཉིད་ལས། ཚོས་རྣམས་ལ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་  
 ཉིད་ཡོད་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས་པ་དང་། མེད་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས་པ་  
 དང་ཡོད་མེད་ལེགས་པར་སྐྱེ་བ་གསུམ་ཡིན་པ་ནི། ཞེས་གསུངས་  
 པའི་སྤྱིར་ན་

*Comment.*<sup>a</sup> We have seen how Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa hold that in Paramārthasamudgata’s question in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* about the first wheel of doctrine, “The Supramundane Victor [initially] pronounced, in many ways, the own-character of the aggregates,” the term “own-character” means the establishment of objects by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses, and we have seen that, for them, the term “character” in Buddha’s answer, “Concerning that, what are **character**-non-natures of phenomena? Those which are imputational characters,”<sup>b</sup> means the same. But what about Tsong-kha-pa’s description (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 127), cited just above, that in the first wheel Buddha simply stated that phenomena are equally established by way of their own character and does not specify “established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses”?

The bases being posited as interpretable or definitive are the three—the statements [in the first wheel] that **phenomena equally have nature in the sense of being established by way of their own character**, the statements [in the middle wheel] that phenomena equally do not have such, and the good differentiation [in the final wheel] of those [phenomena] that have [such establishment] and those that do not.<sup>c</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #44, 99-101.

<sup>b</sup> “Imputational character” (*kun btags kyi mtshan nyid, parikalpita-lakṣaṇa*) and “imputational nature” (*kun btags kyi rang bzhin, parikalpitasvabhāva*) are synonymous.

<sup>c</sup> The Tibetan (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 389) is: *drang nges su 'jog pa 'i gzhi ni chos rnam la rang gi mtshan nyid kyis grub pa 'i ngo bo nyid yod mnyam du gsungs pa dang med mnyam du gsungs pa dang yod med legs par phyé ba gsum yin pa.*

Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa must show how to reconcile their explanation with this statement (and several others) by Tsong-kha-pa that seem to present exactly the opposite of what they are proposing. Below, Jam-yang-shay-pa, repeating his predecessor Gung-ru Chö-jung,<sup>a</sup> answers by insisting that Tsong-kha-pa's statement does not say what it seems; rather, Tsong-kha-pa is (or should be) saying:

The first wheel indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*]<sup>b</sup> **equally has statements of the words**, “Phenomena ranging from forms through to the harmonies with enlightenment have the nature<sup>c</sup> of being established by way of their own character,” and the middle wheel **equally has statements of the words**, “Phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted knowers of all aspects [that is, omniscient consciousnesses] do not have the nature of being established by way of their own character.”<sup>d</sup>

The grammar (as well as the reading by all of the major commentators except Gung-ru Chö-jung, Jam-yang-shay-pa, and their followers) is that Tsong-kha-pa is saying that in the first wheel Buddha said that phenomena **equally have** nature in the sense of being established by way of their own character and that in the middle wheel he said that phenomena **equally do not have** such, but, according to Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa, this is simply a mis-reading because of the absurdities that such a reading would entail, as have been detailed earlier. To follow them, the above citation should be translated into English as:

The bases being posited as interpretable or definitive are the three—the statements **equally [present throughout the**

<sup>a</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung's *Garland of White Lotus*, 8a.3-8b.1, and Jam-yang-shay-pa's *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*, 33.2-33.6.

<sup>b</sup> As always in this context, the reference is to the first wheel “as indicated in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*”; therefore, Jam-yang-shay-pa (33.5) corrects Gung-ru Chö-jung's “first wheel” (*'khor lo dang po*, 8a.6) to *'dir bstan 'khor lo dang po*.

<sup>c</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung (8a.6) reads *ngo bo nyid* whereas Jam-yang-shay-pa (33.5/13a.5) reads *ngo bo*.

<sup>d</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa's *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*, 33.5: *'dir bstan 'khor lo dang por gzugs nas byang phyogs kyi bar gyi chos rnams la rang gi mtshan nyid kyis grub pa'i ngo bo nyid yod ces pa'i tshig yod mnyam dang/ bar par gzugs nas rnam mkhyen gyi bar gyi chos rnams la rang gi mtshan nyid kyis grub pa'i ngo bo nyid med ces pa'i tshig yod mnyam du gsungs zhes pa'i don yin..*

**sūtras of the first wheel]** that phenomena have nature in the sense of being established by way of their own character, the statements **equally [present throughout the sūtras of the middle wheel]** that phenomena do not have such, and the good differentiation [in the final wheel] of those [phenomena] that have [such establishment] and those that do not.

The grammar does not easily yield what Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa see, but it is an inventive, creative way of making sense out of what Tsong-kha-pa says in the light of their decision that “own-character” has to mean the establishment of objects by way of own character **as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses.**” Since they view the rules of allegiance to the founder of their sect such that they cannot refute Tsong-kha-pa’s own words, they must make them say something that they do not seem to say. By claiming that what Tsong-kha-pa means is only that the **words** “Phenomena ranging from forms through to the harmonies with enlightenment have the nature of being established by way of their own character,” are equally present throughout the first wheel, they can make the further claim that what those words mean is that the first wheel teaches that these phenomena are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses. This division into words and meaning allows them to leave Tsong-kha-pa’s statement as is and yet read a different meaning into it.

*Our response:* [That *The Essence of Eloquence* says, “The bases being posited as interpretable or definitive are the three—the statements (in the first wheel) that phenomena equally have nature in the sense of being established by way of their own character, the statements (in the middle wheel) that phenomena equally do not have such, and the good differentiation (in the final wheel) of those (phenomena) that have (such establishment) and those that do not” does not entail [that **in middle wheel sūtras as indicated here it is explicitly taught that all phenomena ranging from forms to omniscient consciousness equally are not established by way of their own character]** because that [statement by Tsong-kha-pa] means:<sup>a</sup>

The first wheel equally has statements of the words, “Phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment have the nature of being established by way of their own

<sup>a</sup> See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 100.

character,” and the middle wheel equally has statements of the words, “Phenomena ranging from forms to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects do not have the nature of being established by way of their own character.”

[འདི་ཉིད་ལས། ཚོས་རྣམས་ལ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་ཡོད་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས་པ་དང་། མེད་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས་པ་དང་ཡོད་མེད་ལེགས་པར་བྱེ་བ་གསུམ་ཡིན་པ་ནི། ཞེས་གསུངས་ན། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་བར་བར་གཞུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་མཉམ་དུ་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པས་]མ་བྱབ་སྟེ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཞུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་ལ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་ཡོད་ཅེས་པའི་ཚིག་ཡོད་མཉམ་དང་། བར་བར་གཞུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཐུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་ལ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་ཚིག་ཡོད་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན་ཡིན་པའི་བྱིར།

### Unpacking Debate 6 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa's Positions [78]

1	In first wheel sūtras as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> it is not explicitly taught that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character.
2	In middle wheel sūtras as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> it is not explicitly taught that all phenomena ranging from forms to omniscient consciousness equally are not established by way of their own character.
3	That Tsong-kha-pa's <i>The Essence of Eloquence</i> says, “The bases being posited as interpretable or definitive are the three—the statements (in the first wheel) that phenomena equally have nature in the sense of being established by way of their own character, the statements (in the middle wheel) that phenomena equally do not have such, and the good differentiation (in the final wheel) of those phenomena that have such establishment and those that do not” does not entail that in middle wheel sūtras it is explicitly taught that all phenomena ranging

	from forms to omniscient consciousness equally are not established by way of their own character.
4	Tsong-kha-pa's statement means:  The first wheel equally has statements of the words, "Phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment have the nature of being established by way of their own character," and the middle wheel equally has statements of the words, "Phenomena ranging from forms to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects do not have the nature of being established by way of their own character."

7. *Also someone says:*<sup>a</sup> There is a way in which [Paramārthasamudgata] questions [the Teacher] because he asks this question:

In the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, the Supramundane Victor] said that phenomena ranging from forms through to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are equally established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them; in the middle wheel as indicated here, [the Supramundane Victor] said that phenomena ranging from forms through to exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects are equally not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses.

and so forth.

ཡང་ཁ་ཅིག ། གྲི་བ་ལྷུས་ཚུལ་ཡོད་དེ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་  
 དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་སྟོགས་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་  
 འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་མཉམ་  
 དུ་གསུངས། བར་པར་གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཁྱེན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་  
 ཐམས་ཅད་དེར་མ་གྲུབ་མཉམ་དུ་གསུངས་ཞེས་སོགས་གྲི་བ་ལྷུས་  
 ཟེར་ན།

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 17a.4; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 13a.6; 2008 Taipei reprint, 22.19.

*Our response:* Well then, it [absurdly] follows that in the second wheel [as indicated in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] it is explicitly taught that all phenomena, forms and so forth, are not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses because [according to you your] way [Paramārthasamudgata] questions [the Teacher] is logically feasible.

འོ་ན་འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་བར་པར་གཟུགས་སོགས་ཚོས་  
 ཐམས་ཅད་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 གྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པར་ཐལ། བར་པའི་དྲི་བ་ལྟས་  
 ཚུལ་<sup>[17b]</sup>འཐད་པའི་བྱིར།

If you [incorrectly] accept [that in the second wheel as indicated here it is explicitly taught that all phenomena, forms and so forth, are not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses], it [absurdly] follows that the statement in the second unit of the *Sūtra [Unraveling the Thought]* on the meaning established, “is surpassable, provides an opportunity” is not logically feasible because you [incorrectly] accept [that in the second wheel as indicated here it is explicitly taught that all phenomena, forms and so forth, are not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses] and because it [absurdly] follows that even the statement, “Thinking of what did you say?” has no relevance [that is, is senseless] because [according to you] a mode of the explicit teaching by the middle wheel sūtras exceeding the mode of explicit teaching by the middle wheel sūtras indicated here is not demonstrable [since the explicit teaching by the middle wheel sūtras indicated here would be literally acceptable, since all phenomena, forms and so forth, are indeed not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses].

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་བར་པར་གཟུགས་སོགས་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་  
 པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པ་]འདོད་  
 བྱ། གྲུབ་དོན་གྱི་མདོ་ཚན་གཉིས་པ་ལས། ལྷན་མཚེས་པ་སྐབས་  
 མཚེས་པ་ཞེས་གསུངས་པ་མི་འཐད་པར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་  
 བར་པར་གཟུགས་སོགས་ཚོས་ཐམས་ཅད་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་

མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར་དང་། ཅི་  
ལ་དགོངས་ནས་གསུངས་ཞེས་པའང་འབྲེལ་མེད་པར་ཐལ།  
འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་བར་པས་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་ཚུལ་ལས་སྟག་  
བསྟན་དུ་མེད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

Unpacking Debate 7 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa's Positions [83]	
1	In the second wheel as indicated in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> it is not explicitly taught that all phenomena, forms and so forth, are not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses.
2	If it did teach the above, it would be literally acceptable and hence definitive, whereas the statement in the second unit of the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> on the meaning established says that the second wheel as indicated here “is surpassable, provides an opportunity” for refutation.
3	Paramāthasamudgata’s asking “Thinking of what did you say [in the middle wheel of doctrine that all phenomena are] natureless and so forth?” has relevance because there is a mode of the explicit teaching by the middle wheel sūtras exceeding the mode of explicit teaching by the middle wheel sūtras indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> . For, the explicit teaching by the middle wheel sūtras indicated here is not literally acceptable. Indeed, all phenomena, forms and so forth, are <i>not</i> established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses, and thus the mode of explicit teaching by the middle wheel sūtras indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> cannot be that all phenomena, forms and so forth, are not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses.

8. *Also someone says:*<sup>a</sup> [Paramāthasamudgata] asks the question:

In the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, the Supramundane Victor] said that forms and so forth

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 17b.2; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 13b.2; 2008 Taipei reprint, 23.6.

are established as external objects and said in the middle wheel that they are not established in that way [as external objects].

and so forth.

ཡང་ཁ་ཅིག ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་སོགས་  
 ཕྱི་རོལ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་གསུངས། བར་བར་དེ་ལྟར་མ་གྲུབ་པར་  
 གསུངས་ཞེས་སོགས་ཀྱི་དྲི་བ་ལྟས་ཟེར་ན།

*Our response:* Well then, it [absurdly] follows that the explanation, “[The Supramundane Victor] also pronounced [in many ways] the own-character [of the aggregates],” is not logically feasible because [according to you] the distinction is not logically feasible that:

- even though in the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] it is explicitly indicated that forms and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them,<sup>a</sup>
- establishment as an external object is not explicitly indicated

because [according to you your] way [Paramārthasamudgata] questions [the Teacher] is logically feasible.

འོ་ན་[བཅོམ་ལྡན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་ལུང་པོ་རྣམས་  
 ཀྱི་]རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཞེས་བཤད་པ་མི་འཐད་  
 པར་ཐལ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་སོགས་རང་  
 འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་  
 དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་ཀྱང་། ཕྱི་རོལ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་མ་  
 བསྟན་པའི་བྱད་པར་མི་འཐད་པའི་ཕྱིར་ཏེ། དྲི་བ་ལྟས་ཚུལ་  
 འཐད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

Moreover, it [absurdly] follows that it is reasonable to take own-character in the statement “[The Supramundane Victor] also pronounced [in many

<sup>a</sup> For this stance, see above in debate 5, 133.



ways] the own-character [of the aggregates],” as establishment as an external object” because you [incorrectly] accept [that (Paramārthasamudgata) asks the question:

In the first wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, the Supramundane Victor) said that forms and so forth are established as external objects and said in the middle wheel that they are not established in that way (as external objects).

and so forth. If you [incorrectly] accept [that it is reasonable to take own-character in the statement, “The Supramundane Victor also pronounced in many ways the own-character of the aggregates,” as establishment as an external object] it [absurdly] follows that this sūtra passage explicitly indicates the mode of pronouncement of establishment as an external object because you [incorrectly] accept [that it is reasonable to take own-character in the statement, “The Supramundane Victor also pronounced in many ways the own-character of the aggregates,” as establishment as an external object].

གཞན་ཡང་། [བཅོམ་ལྷན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་ལུང་པོ་རྣམས་  
 གྱི་]རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡེལ་ཞེས་པའི་རང་མཚན་དེ་  
 རྩི་རོལ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པ་ལ་བྱེད་རིགས་པར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བཞུན་འཁོར་  
 ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་སོགས་རྩི་རོལ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་གསུངས། བར་བར་དེ་ལྟར་མ་  
 གྲུབ་པར་གསུངས་ཞེས་སོགས་ཀྱི་དྲི་བ་ལྟས་པར་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར། [བཅོམ་ལྷན་  
 འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་ལུང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡེལ་  
 ཞེས་པའི་རང་མཚན་དེ་རྩི་རོལ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པ་ལ་བྱེད་རིགས་པར་]འདོད་ན། མདོ་  
 དེས་རྩི་རོལ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་བཀའ་སྡེལ་ཚུལ་དངོས་སུ་བཞུན་  
 པར་ཐལ། [བཅོམ་ལྷན་འདས་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་གྲངས་དུ་མར་ལུང་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྡེལ་ཞེས་པའི་རང་མཚན་དེ་རྩི་རོལ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པ་ལ་བྱེད་  
 རིགས་པར་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

If you [incorrectly] accept [that this sūtra passage explicitly indicates the mode of pronouncement of establishment as an external object], it [absurdly] follows that the terms expressing “establishment by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness apprehending it”

explicitly express “establishment as an external object” because you [incorrectly] accept [that this sūtra passage explicitly indicates the mode of pronouncement of establishment as an external object]. If you [incorrectly] accept [that the terms expressing “establishment by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness apprehending it” explicitly express “establishment as an external object”], it [absurdly] follows that a conceptual consciousness apprehending in that way [establishment by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness] is that [that is, perceives (its object) as established as an external object] because you [incorrectly] accept [that these terms expressing “establishment by way of own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness” explicitly express “establishment as an external object”].

It is not reasonable to accept [that a conceptual consciousness apprehending establishment by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness explicitly perceives (its object) as established as an external object] because terms and consciousnesses are eliminative engagers of their own objects.<sup>a</sup>

[མདོ་དམ་ཕྱི་ལོ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཚུལ་དངོས་སུ་བརྟན་པ་]འདོད་ན།  
 རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 པར་བཅོད་པའི་སྐྱ་དམ་ཕྱི་ལོ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་  
 བཅོད་པར་ཐལ། [མདོ་དམ་ཕྱི་ལོ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ཚུལ་དངོས་སུ་  
 བརྟན་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར། [རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་བཅོད་པའི་སྐྱ་དམ་ཕྱི་ལོ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བཅོད་  
 པ་]འདོད་ན། [རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 པ་]དེ་ལྟར་འཛིན་པའི་རྟོག་པ་ལ་[ཕྱི་ལོ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་སྐྱང་བ་]དེར་  
 ཐལ། [རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་བཅོད་  
 པའི་སྐྱ་དམ་ཕྱི་ལོ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བཅོད་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར།  
 [རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་འཛིན་པའི་རྟོག་

<sup>a</sup> Since conceptual consciousnesses are eliminative in manner, they cannot explicitly know two things at once. See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 138.

བ་ལ་མྱི་ལོ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་སྒྲུབ་བ་]འདོད་མི་རིགས་ཏེ། ལྷ་  
 ཉོག་རང་ཡུལ་<sup>[18a]</sup>ལ་སེལ་འཇུག་ཡིན་པའི་བྱིར།

*Comment.*<sup>a</sup> Since the Mind-Only School speaks of two kinds of emptiness (the absence of establishment of apprehended-object and apprehending-subject as different entities and the absence of establishment of phenomena by way of their own character as referents of terms and conceptual consciousnesses), the question arises whether the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* also speaks of both and, correspondingly, whether it describes the first wheel of doctrine as teaching the opposite of both kinds of emptiness. The *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* certainly speaks of a thoroughly established nature that is the other-powered natures' emptiness of factors imputed in the manner of entity and attribute, but does it address the emptiness of externality? Also, as explained above, the first wheel of doctrine as described by Paramārthasamudgata in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* teaches that objects are established by way of their own character as the referents of words and conceptual consciousnesses, but does this first wheel of doctrine teach that forms, for instance, are entities external to the consciousnesses apprehending them?

As Gung-ru Chö-jung surmises,<sup>b</sup> one might mistakenly be led to think that Tsong-kha-pa holds that the first wheel of doctrine as described by Paramārthasamudgata even **explicitly** teaches that forms and so forth are external objects<sup>c</sup> because in *The Essence of*

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #52, 133-138.

<sup>b</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung's *Garland of White Lotus*, 10b.6-11b.5, especially 11a.5-11b.5. See also Gung-thang Kön-chog-tan-pay-drön-me's *Difficult Points*, 95.15-96.4, A-khu Lo-drö-gya-tsho's *Precious Lamp*, 67.6-69.3, and Dön-drub-gyal-tshan's *Four Intertwined Commentaries*, 595.3.

<sup>c</sup> Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho (*Port of Entry*, 150.1) reports that this is the position of the Lo-sel-ling College. Indeed, their textbook author, Pañ-chen Sö-nam-drag-pa (*Garland of Blue Lotus*, 11b.6), at first says only that the first wheel teaches externality but later clearly says that the first wheel *explicitly* teaches externality (12b.6 and 13a.2). Since it is taken for granted that the first wheel explicitly teaches that phenomena are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses, Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho's characterization seems to be accurate. The late Ye-she-tub-tan, despite being a follower of Pañ-chen Sö-nam-drag-pa, used the distinction that a passage that teaches the one explicitly teaches the other implicitly.

*Eloquence* when explaining how the first wheel requires interpretation, Tsong-kha-pa speaks about the first-wheel teaching of externality (thus indicating that the first wheel teaches external objects) and then about the teaching of imputation in the manner of entity and attribute. Tsong-kha-pa (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 234-235) initially shows that the teaching of externality requires interpretation:

When the mode of commentary on the suchness of things by the masters, the brothers [Asaṅga and Vasubandhu], is taken as given above, the description—in the first wheel—of the two, apprehended-object and apprehending-subject, in terms of externality is elucidated as requiring interpretation. The **[factual] basis [in Buddha's] thought** is [the appearance of the six types of objects—forms and so forth—to the six types of consciousness as if they were external objects, as is] stated in Vasubandhu's *The Twenty*:

The Subduer spoke about these—  
The seeds from which cognitions respectively arise  
And the appearances [of forms]—  
In a dualistic way as [internal and external] sense-  
spheres of those [cognitions].

Also, the **purpose** [of his teaching such] is as the same text says:

That form-sense-spheres and so forth exist [as external  
objects]  
Was said through the force of a thought (*dgongs pa*) be-  
hind it  
With regard to beings tamed by that,  
Like [the teaching of] spontaneously arisen sentient be-  
ings [as substantially established or permanent].

When it is taught that a consciousness viewing forms and so forth arises from external and internal sense-spheres, it is for the sake of realizing that there is no viewer and so forth except for those. The **damage to the literal reading** is the reasonings refuting external objects.

And right after that, Tsong-kha-pa (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 235) goes on to say:

Since an imputational factor imputed to phenomena in the

manner of entity and attribute is a phenomenon-constituent and a phenomenon-sense-sphere, statements that those two [that is, phenomenon-constituent and phenomenon-sense-sphere]<sup>a</sup> are established by way of their own character without differentiating [from among phenomena what does and does not exist by way of its own character] also require interpretation.

Since Tsong-kha-pa **first** speaks about the fact that first-wheel teachings of externality require interpretation, it would *seem* that the first wheel that Paramārthasamudgata describes in his question would explicitly teach external objects.

However, Gung-ru Chö-jung,<sup>b</sup> while admitting that there are first-wheel passages teaching externality, holds that the term “own-character” in Paramārthasamudgata’s description is only the establishment of objects by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses. He holds that the passages teaching these two types of over-reified status of phenomena are separate<sup>c</sup> because in the last line of the passage just cited, Tsong-kha-pa, by using the word “also,” separates the two topics, giving the impression that there are separate teachings in the first wheel about external objects and about establishment of objects by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses as well as separate refutations of these teachings in the third wheel. Gung-ru Chö-jung therefore holds

<sup>a</sup> Since these two, as categories, contain instances (such as uncompounded space) that are permanent, the categories themselves are considered to be permanent and hence not established by way of their own character. Tsong-kha-pa’s more specific reference is to imputational natures that are factors imputed in the manner of entity and attribute, and when it is taught in the first wheel that all phenomena, without differentiation, are established by way of their own character, these imputational natures, being existent, also are included as being established by way of their own character. Since they exist but actually do not exist by way of their own character, such scriptures also (that is, in addition to those teaching external objects) require interpretation.

Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho (*Port of Entry*, 699.6) says that, with respect to the teaching that all phenomena are established by way of their own character, the **factual basis in Buddha’s thought** is that other-powered natures and thoroughly established natures are established by way of their own character; the **purpose** is to prevent the annihilationist view of holding that imputational natures do not exist at all; and the **damage to the literal reading** is the reasonings proving that imputational natures are not established by way of their own character.

<sup>b</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung’s *Garland of White Lotus*, 9b.3-10b.5.

<sup>c</sup> Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho (*Port of Entry*, 150.1) reports this position.

that the first wheel is more than what Paramārthasamudgata explicitly describes.

One immediately wonders why Tsong-kha-pa chose first to discuss—as requiring interpretation—the type of reification that Paramārthasamudgata does not explicitly describe and, only after that and as an addendum, mentions the type explicitly set forth in Paramārthasamudgata's description of the first wheel. Gung-ru Chö-jung answers this qualm by claiming that Tsong-kha-pa uses the format of how the teaching of externality requires interpretation as a **model** for showing how the teaching of imputation in the manner of entities and attributes requires interpretation. Gung-ru Chö-jung is attempting to suggest that, even though Tsong-kha-pa's treatment of the teaching of externality is both first and more detailed, he intended it as a model for how the teaching of factors imputed in the manner of entity and attribute requires interpretation.

Gung-ru Chö-jung's point is forced, but he uses it as an opportunity to show how the latter teaching fits into the threefold schema of showing (1) what was behind it in Buddha's thought, (2) the purpose of Buddha's teaching something that does not accord with the fact, and (3) the refutations showing that such a teaching does not accord with the fact. Thus, according to Gung-ru Chö-jung, Tsong-kha-pa cites Vasubandhu's *The Twenty* in order that one might understand these three factors:

1. **The basis in Buddha's thought:** Just as the factually true basis behind Buddha's non-factual teaching in the first wheel that external objects exist is that awarenesses are generated to which external objects falsely appear, so the factually true basis behind Buddha's non-factual teaching in the first wheel, as described by Paramārthasamudgata, that objects are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses is that awarenesses are generated to which forms and so forth falsely appear to be established.
2. **The purpose:** Just as the first-wheel teaching that external objects exist is for the sake of trainees with the outlook of the Great Exposition and Sūtra schools, so the first-wheel teaching, as described by Paramārthasamudgata, that forms and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses is for the sake of trainees with the outlook of the Great Exposition and

Sūtra schools.

3. **The refutations of the explicit teaching:** Just as the first wheel that teaches external objects is damaged by the reasonings refuting external objects, so the first-wheel teaching, as described by Paramārthasamudgata, that forms and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses is damaged by the reasonings refuting this.<sup>a</sup>

Gung-ru Chō-jung concludes his argument—that the first wheel, as described by Paramārthasamudgata, explicitly teaches that factors imputed in the manner of entity and attribute are established by way of their own character and does not explicitly teach externality—by using the principle of the hypothetical opponent’s objection against this adversary. The opponent claims that Tsong-kha-pa must have considered the teaching of externality to be what Paramārthasamudgata explicitly describes as the first-wheel teaching because Tsong-kha-pa mentions it in a **primary** way when he speaks about how the first wheel requires interpretation. In response, Gung-ru Chō-jung, employing the same principle, points to the fact that when in *The Essence of Eloquence* Tsong-kha-pa gives the reasonings damaging the explicit teaching of the first wheel and proving that other-powered natures are empty of the imputational nature, he **first** cites the reasoning showing that objects are not established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective names and conceptual consciousnesses. Tsong-kha-pa (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 208) quotes Asaṅga’s *Summary of the Great Vehicle*:<sup>b</sup>

Because an awareness does not exist prior to name,  
 Because manifold, and because unrestricted,  
 There are the contradictions of being in the essence of that,  
     of many entities,  
 And of the mixture of entities. Therefore, it is proven.

From the fact that Tsong-kha-pa cites this type of reasoning and

<sup>a</sup> Gung-ru Chō-jung does not give this third item; it is implicit to his argument, and thus I have supplied it, even though he may have meant to avoid bringing up the matter since he may have considered each of the sets of reasonings as refuting both types of reification.

<sup>b</sup> Between the question just asked and this stanza there is another sentence, not cited by Tsong-kha-pa, that says the same in prose. For commentary on this stanza see above, 62.

not one proving the lack of externality, Gung-ru Chō-jung can cogently claim that, for Tsong-kha-pa, the type of non-factual teaching that Paramārthasamudgata describes as constituting the first wheel is that factors imputed in the manner of entity and attribute are established by way of their own character.

Once the first wheel **as described by Paramārthasamudgata** is explicitly concerned with imputation in the manner of entity and attribute, it cannot explicitly be concerned with externality, since “own-character” can explicitly connote only one meaning. Gung-ru Chō-jung therefore concludes that Paramārthasamudgata does not describe the first-wheel teaching of externality and that these two types of first-wheel teachings are to be found in separate sūtra passages.

I would aver that when, in chapter 12 of *The Essence of Eloquence*, Tsong-kha-pa addresses the issue of the three aspects of sūtra passages that require interpretation—he speaks initially and primarily of the teaching of externality because:

- there is no Indian source that clearly speaks of the three aspects for the teaching of imputation in the manner of entity and attribute and thus it was not convenient to Tsong-kha-pa's main point, and
- in India the emphasis switched to the teaching on externality.

Unfortunately, Gung-ru Chō-jung does not give an example of a separate first-wheel sūtra passage that explicitly teaches externality, and it is likely that the search for one led Jam-yang-shay-pa,<sup>a</sup> his successor as textbook author for Go-mang, to assert two centuries later that the first wheel that Paramārthasamudgata describes as explicitly teaching that forms and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses also **implicitly** teaches externality. He agrees with Gung-ru Chō-jung that the terms expressing that forms and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses do not **explicitly** express that forms and so forth are established as external objects, but he holds that such is **implicitly** expressed. Similarly, he agrees that a

<sup>a</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa's *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*, 34.4-36.1. Jam-yang-shay-pa rearranges but retains the meaning of the first part of Gung-ru Chō-jung's explanation (*Garland of White Lotus*, 9b.3-10a.6) about the fact that such a first-wheel passage cannot explicitly teach externality; however, he drops the second part (10a.6-11b.5) about there being separate sūtra passages since he disagrees with it.



conceptual consciousness conceiving that forms and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses does not **explicitly** conceive that these are established as external objects, but he asserts that such is **implicitly** conceived. The two scholars agree that terms and conceptual consciousnesses operate in an eliminative manner with respect to their referents, zeroing in on only one aspect, and hence cannot **explicitly** express or conceive two things at once. However, Gung-ru Chö-jung draws the conclusion that there must be separate sūtra passages teaching these two topics, whereas Jam-yang-shay-pa uses the distinction of explicit and implicit teachings to assert that one passage does both.<sup>a</sup>

Furthermore, it [absurdly] follows that [the passage in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] “What are character-non-natures of phenomena?” and so forth<sup>b</sup> explicitly refutes external objects because you [incorrectly] accept [that these terms expressing “establishment by way of own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness” explicitly express “establishment as an external object.”] You cannot accept [that “What are character-non-natures of phenomena?” and so forth explicitly refutes external objects], because it is said that without explicitly refuting those [external objects] here [in the Questions of Paramārthasamudgata Chapter], through the force of explicitly refuting establishment by way of [objects’] own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses one enters into Cognition[-only]<sup>c</sup> that is an absence of external objects<sup>d</sup> and because

<sup>a</sup> These scholars are forced into their respective positions by Tsong-kha-pa’s identification of “own-character” as not referring to the unique character of objects but to establishment by way of its own character, which Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa take to mean a misperceived status of phenomena.

<sup>b</sup> The passage in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* is:

Concerning that, what are character-non-natures of phenomena? Those which are imputational characters.

Why? It is thus: Those [imputational characters] are characters posited by names and terminology and do not subsist by way of their own character. Therefore, they are said to be “character-non-natures.”

See Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 86.

<sup>c</sup> *rnam rig tsam, vijñaptimātra.*

<sup>d</sup> External objects are not explicitly refuted in the seventh chapter, the Questions of Paramārthasamudgata Chapter of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, but through the force of the explicit refutation of establishment by way of objects’ own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses in that chapter, one can understand cognition-only that is an

the distinction that those [external objects] are explicitly refuted in the Questions of Maitreya Chapter [of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] is logically feasible.

གཞན་ཡང་། ཚེས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་མཚན་ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་པ་གང་  
 ཞེན་ཞེས་སོགས་ཀྱིས་སྤྱོད་དངོས་སུ་བཀག་པར་ཐལ། [རང་  
 འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་བརྗོད་པའི་སྤྱོད་དངོས་སུ་  
 རོལ་དོན་དུ་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བརྗོད་པ་]འདོད་པའི་སྤྱིར། [ཚེས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་པ་གང་ཞེན་ཞེས་སོགས་ཀྱིས་སྤྱོད་དངོས་སུ་བཀག་  
 པ་]འདོད་མི་རུས་ཏེ། [དོན་དམ་ཡང་དག་པགས་ཀྱི་ལུང་]འདིར་[སྤྱོད་  
 དོན་]དེ་དངོས་སུ་མ་བཀག་པར་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་  
 རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དངོས་སུ་བཀག་པའི་ཤུགས་ཀྱིས་  
 སྤྱོད་དོན་མེད་པའི་རྣམ་རིག་ལ་འཇུག་པར་གསུངས་པའི་སྤྱིར་  
 དང་། བྱམས་ལུས་ཀྱི་ལུང་ལས་[སྤྱོད་དོན་]དེ་དངོས་སུ་བཀག་པའི་  
 ལུང་པར་འཐད་པའི་སྤྱིར།

The first corner of the sign [which is that it is said that without explicitly refuting those (external objects) here (in the Questions of Paramārthasamudgata Chapter), through the force of explicitly refuting establishment by way of (objects') own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses one enters into cognition(-only) that is an absence of external objects] is established because this very text [Tsong-kha-pa's *The Essence of Eloquence*] says:<sup>a</sup>

Asaṅga's *Summary of the Great Vehicle* says that entry by way of this [mode of emptiness] is entry into cognition-only.

[འདིར་དེ་དངོས་སུ་མ་བཀག་པར་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དངོས་སུ་བཀག་པའི་ཤུགས་ཀྱིས་སྤྱོད་དོན་མེད་པའི་རྣམ་རིག་ལ་

---

absence of external objects. Nevertheless, it is not that an explicit refutation of external objects is absent from the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, for an explicit refutation of external objects occurs in the eighth chapter, the Questions of Maitreya Chapter.

<sup>a</sup> Translation taken from Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 200-201.

འཇུག་པར་གསུངས་པ་] ཏྟགས་ཟུར་དང་པོ་གྲུབ་སྟེ། འདི་ཉིད་ལས།  
 ཐེག་བསྐྱེས་ལས་<sup>a</sup>འདིའི་སྐོ་ནས་འཇུག་པ་དེ་རྣམ་པར་རིག་པ་  
 ཅོམ་དུ་འཇུག་པར་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར། ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར།

The second corner of the sign [which is that the Questions of Maitreya Chapter explicitly refutes external objects] is established because the Questions of Maitreya Chapter says:

Maitreya asks, “Is the image that is the object of activity of meditative stabilization said to be different from the mind or not different?”

[The Supramundane Victor] pronounced, “Maitreya, it is not different.”

and this very text [Tsong-kha-pa’s *The Essence of Eloquence*] says:<sup>b</sup>

in that sūtra on the occasion of [discussing] calm abiding [in the “Questions of Maitreya Chapter”], a refutation of external objects is clearly set forth.

[བྱམས་ལྷུས་ཀྱི་ལེའུ་ལས་དེ་དངོས་སུ་བཀག་པ་] ཏྟགས་ཟུར་གཉིས་པ་གྲུབ་  
 ཏེ། བྱམས་ལྷུས་ཀྱི་ལེའུ་ལས། བྱམས་པས་གསོལ་བ་ཉིང་ངེ་འཛིན་  
 གྱི་སྦྱོང་ཡུལ་གྱི་གཟུགས་བརྟན་དེ་སེམས་ལས་ཐ་དད་པ་ཞེས་

<sup>a</sup> Correcting Jam-yang-shay-pa’s citation from Asaṅga’s *Grounds of Bodhisattvas* (*byang sa*) in the 2011 TBRC *bla brang* (18a.3) and in the 1987 Go-mang Lhasa (14a.1) to Asaṅga’s *Summary of the Great Vehicle* (*theg bsdus*) in accordance with *The Essence of Eloquence* (Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 200 and 432.5), where indeed both of these texts are mentioned:

In Asaṅga’s *Grounds of Bodhisattvas*, this mode of emptiness [set forth in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] is explained as the object observed by the exalted wisdom purifying the obstructions to omniscience and as the middle path abandoning the two extremes of which there is none higher, and his *Summary of the Great Vehicle* says that entry by way of this [mode of emptiness] is entry into cognition-only. Therefore, this is not already established by the Hearer Schools [that is, the Great Exposition and Sūtra Schools].

For the passage from Asaṅga’s *Summary of the Great Vehicle*, see Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 213-214.

<sup>b</sup> See *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 217; for discussion, *Reflections on Reality*, part 4; and *Absorption in No External World*, #52, #53..

བགྱི་འཇམ། ཐ་དད་མ་ལགས་ཞེས་བགྱི། བཀའ་སྣུལ་བ་བྱམས་པ་ཐ་  
 དད་པ་མ་ཡིན་ནོ། །ཞེས་པ་དང་། འདི་ཉིད་ལས། [བྱམས་ལུས་ཀྱི་  
 ལཱ་]མདོ་དེ་ལས་ཞི་གནས་ཀྱི་སྐབས་སུ་ནི་ཕྱི་རོལ་བཀག་པ་  
 གསལ་བར་གསུངས་སོ། ། ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར།

*Comment.*<sup>a</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa agrees with Gung-ru Chö-jung that what is **explicitly** refuted here in this chapter of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* when it speaks of the character-non-nature is that objects are not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses. He also agrees that through the force of that refutation one understands cognition-only, the absence of external objects. Since one must enter into, or understand, cognition-only, which means the absence of external objects, in dependence upon explicitly refuting that forms and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective terms and conceptual consciousnesses, the realization of the emptiness of such establishment is a method (and hence a precursor) for realizing the emptiness of external objects.<sup>b</sup> For Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa, the realization of the former does not constitute realization of the latter but leads to it, and thus it is impossible for the first wheel **explicitly** to teach the opposite of both kinds of emptiness, since the reasoning refuting the one would have to **explicitly** refute the other.<sup>c</sup>

### Unpacking Debate 8 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa's Positions [85]

1	In the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> it is explicitly indicated that forms and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them, and establishment as an external object is not explicitly taught.
2	Therefore, it is not reasonable to take own-character in the statement “[The Supramundane Victor] also pronounced [in

<sup>a</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #52, 138.

<sup>b</sup> This sentence is drawn from Gung-ru Chö-jung's *Garland of White Lotus*, 10a.4-10a.6. Not all Ge-lug-pa scholars agree that the two realizations are serial; see Hopkins, *Reflections on Reality*, chapter 19.

<sup>c</sup> Jig-may-dam-chö-gya-tsho's *Port of Entry*, 150.5.

	many ways] the own-character [of the aggregates],” as establishment as an external object.”
3	Consequently, this sūtra passage does not explicitly indicate the mode of pronouncement of establishment as an external object.
4	Hence, the terms expressing “establishment by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness apprehending it” do not explicitly express “establishment as an external object.”
5	Similarly, a conceptual consciousness apprehending establishment by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness does not perceive its object as established as an external object because terms and consciousnesses are eliminative engagers of their own objects.
6	The passage in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> , “What are character- <b>non</b> -natures of phenomena?” and so forth does not explicitly refute external objects.
7	Nevertheless, it is said that without explicitly refuting those external objects here in the Questions of Paramārthasamudgata Chapter, through the force of explicitly refuting establishment by way of own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses one enters into Cognition-only that is an absence of external objects.
8	External objects are explicitly refuted in the Questions of Maitreya Chapter of the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> .

9. *Also someone says:*<sup>a</sup> It follows that it is reasonable to take “own-character” in the statement, “[The Supramundane Victor] pronounced the own-character” as the unique character because the Chinese *Great Commentary [on the “Sūtra Unraveling the Thought” by Wonch’uk*<sup>b</sup>] explains it that way [as the unique character].

ཡང་ཁ་ཅིག ། རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྤྱུལ་ཞེས་པའི་  
 རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དེ་སྤྱོད་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་བྱེད་ལ་བྱེད་  
 རིགས་པར་བཤམ། རྒྱ་ནག་འབྲེལ་ཆེན་ལས་ [སྤྱོད་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 18a.5; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 14a.4; 2008 Taipei reprint, 24.8.

<sup>b</sup> Tib. *rdzogs gsal / wen tshig / wen tshigs / wanydzeg*, Ch. *Yüan-ts’u*, 613-696.

བྱེད་ལ་]དེ་ལྟར་བཤད་པའི་ཕྱིར་ན་

*Our response:* [That the Chinese *Great Commentary* (on the “*Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*” by Wonch’uk) explains it that way (as the unique character)] does not entail [that **it is reasonable to take “own-character” in the statement, “The Supramundane Victor pronounced the own-character” as the unique character**]. Although that [Chinese *Great Commentary*] does explain [“own-character” here] that way [as the unique character], **it is not reasonable to assert it** because Tsong-kha-pa’s *The Essence of Eloquence* says:<sup>a</sup>

In the Chinese *Great Commentary*, and so forth, the explanation of “own-character” here as the unique character [of the aggregates and so forth] is not reasonable.

[རྒྱ་ནག་འགྲེལ་ཆེན་ལས་དེ་ལྟར་བཤད་ན་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྤུལ་ཞེས་  
 པའི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དེ་ལྷན་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་བྱེད་ལ་བྱེད་རིགས་པས་]མ་  
 བྱེད་སྟེ། [རྒྱ་ནག་འགྲེལ་ཆེན་]དེས་[ལྷན་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་  
 མཚན་བྱེད་ལ་]དེ་ལྟར་བཤད་ཀྱང་ཁས་ལེན་མི་རིགས་ཏེ། འདི་  
 ཉིད་ལས། འདིར་རང་གི་<sup>[18b]</sup>མཚན་ཉིད་ཅེས་པ་རྒྱ་ནག་གི་  
 འགྲེལ་ཆེན་སོགས་ལས་ལྷན་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་ཉིད་ལ་  
 བཤད་པ་ནི་རིགས་པ་མ་ཡིན་ཏེ། ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར།

*Comment.*<sup>b</sup> “Own-character” is read by the Korean scholar Wonch’uk in his *Great Commentary on the “Sūtra Unraveling the Thought”* (which was written in Chinese and translated into Tibetan) as being the unique character or definition of a phenomenon as when Buddha speaks of a phenomenon and then of its unique character that distinguishes it from other phenomena. In the case of form, for instance, this is obstructiveness. Paramārthasamudgata (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 76) describes

<sup>a</sup> Adapted from Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 78-79.

<sup>b</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #48, 107-112; for more speculation see the entire Issue, 107-117.

how Buddha taught the five aggregates in the first wheel of doctrine:

The Supramundane Victor spoke, in many ways, of the own-character of the aggregates. He also spoke of [their] character of production, character of disintegration, abandonment, and thorough knowledge.

In commentary on this, Wonch'uk says:<sup>a</sup>

“Own-character” is the specific character as in, for instance, the explanation, “Form is obstructive....Consciousness is the knower.” “Character of production, character of disintegration” are *general* characters because forms and so forth are entities that have the character<sup>b</sup> of production and disintegration. “Utter abandonment and thorough knowledge” are characters of suffering and of origins [of suffering] because [contaminated] karma and afflictive emotions which are the true origins [of suffering] are to be utterly abandoned and because the fruits of cyclic existence which are true sufferings are to be thoroughly known. Or, “own-character” is the character of self-entity or specific character; the production and disintegration of those two characters pervade all [compounded phenomena and hence are general characters].

Wonch'uk depicts Buddha as speaking first about the character or nature of an object that is specific to it alone, as when he teaches about the obstructiveness of form, which is not shared with other phenomena such as consciousness, and then about characters of form that are shared with other compounded phenomena, such as production and disintegration, and hence are general characters.

Similarly, the *Explanation of the “Sūtra Unraveling the Thought,”*<sup>c</sup> in commentary on the fourth chapter of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, identifies “observation of the signs of the aggregates”<sup>d</sup> as being “from the point of view of thoroughly analyzing **their own signs**”<sup>e</sup> and “observation of the production of the

<sup>a</sup> Peking 5517, vol. 106, chap. 5, 128.5.7.

<sup>b</sup> *mtshan nyid*.

<sup>c</sup> Delhi: Karmapae Choedhey, 1985, *cho*, vol. 205, 109.4. For discussion of the authorship of this commentary, see *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 454.

<sup>d</sup> *phung po'i mtshan ma dmigs pa, skandhanimittopalambha*.

<sup>e</sup> *rang gi mtshan ma yongs su brtags pa'i sgo nas*.

aggregates”<sup>a</sup> and “observation of the disintegration of the aggregates”<sup>b</sup> as being “from the point of view of **general characteristics** and thorough investigation.”<sup>c</sup>

Tsong-kha-pa (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 78-79) rejects Wonch'uk's explanation:

In the Chinese *Great Commentary*<sup>d</sup> [on the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* by the Korean scholar Wonch'uk], and so forth, (259) {370} “own-character”<sup>e</sup> here [in this passage in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] is explained as the unique character [of the aggregates and so forth], but this is not right.<sup>f</sup> For the sūtra itself at the point of [speaking about] imputational factors<sup>g</sup> clearly speaks of establishment by way of [the object's] own character [and does not speak of the unique character], and since even imputational factors have a unique characterization, there would be the fallacy that the character-non-nature could not be explained with respect to imputational factors.

Tsong-kha-pa's point is that if “own-character” in Paramārthasamudgata's question is the unique character of a phenomenon, then when in Buddha's answer (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 82-83) he speaks about character-non-nature:

Paramārthasamudgata, thinking of three non-natures of phenomena—character-non-nature, production-non-nature, and ultimate-non-nature—I taught [in the middle wheel of the teaching], “All phenomena are natureless.”

the term “character” also would have to refer to the unique character of phenomena simply because of the relatedness of the answer to the question. Tsong-kha-pa (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 86) points out that the sūtra itself says not that imputational natures do not have their own unique character but that they do not **subsist by way of their own character**:

<sup>a</sup> *phung po'i skye ba dmigs pa, skandhotpādopalambha.*

<sup>b</sup> *phung po'i 'jig pa dmigs pa, skandha-vināśopalambha.*

<sup>c</sup> *spyi'i mtshan nyid dang yongs su brtags pa'i sgo nas.*

<sup>d</sup> See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #8.

<sup>e</sup> See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issues #27-55, 94.

<sup>f</sup> See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #39.

<sup>g</sup> See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #50.



Those [imputational characters] are characters posited by names and terminology<sup>a</sup> and do not subsist by way of their own character. Therefore, they are said to be “character-non-natures.”

Hence, Tsong-kha-pa cogently holds that “character” in “character-non-nature” has to mean to subsist, or to be established, by way of its own character.

Tsong-kha-pa abruptly changes the topic with no further explanation of this pivotal point. Also, none of his commentators unpacks the issue, but we can speculate that his reasoning is this:

That the construction in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* itself, “does not subsist by way of its own character”<sup>b</sup> as opposed to “its own-character [that is, unique character] does not exist,”<sup>c</sup> indicates a certain mode or status of existence that imputational natures do not have, rather than that they lack a character that defines them. For a mode of being is indicated through the adverbial instrumental “by way of its own character,”<sup>d</sup> whereas if the sūtra meant to indicate merely that imputational natures do not exist, it would have done so directly.

If you [incorrectly] accept [that it is reasonable to take “own-character” in the statement, “(The Supramundane Victor) pronounced the own-character” as the unique character], it [absurdly] follows that it is reasonable to take “character” in the phrase “character-non-nature” as unique character because you [incorrectly] accept [that it is reasonable to take “own-character” in the statement, “(The Supramundane Victor) pronounced the own-character” as the unique character]. If you [incorrectly] accept [that it is reasonable to take “character” in the phrase “character-non-nature” as unique character], it [absurdly] follows that the statement in the *Sutra [Unraveling the Thought]*, “does not subsist by way of its own character,”<sup>e</sup> is not logically feasible because you [incorrectly] accept [that it is reasonable to take “character” in the phrase “character-non-nature” as

<sup>a</sup> See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #104.

<sup>b</sup> *rang gi mtshan nyid gyis gnas pa ma yin.*

<sup>c</sup> *rang gi mtshan nyid yod pa ma yin.*

<sup>d</sup> *rang gi mtshan nyid gyis.*

<sup>e</sup> As is explained just below in connection with the citation from Tsong-kha-pa’s *The Essence of Eloquence*, the sūtra does not speak of lacking a unique character; see also *Absorption in No External World*, 94, and *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 86.

the unique character]. And because Tsong-kha-pa's *The Essence of Eloquence* says:<sup>a</sup>

For the sūtra itself at the point of [speaking about] imputational factors clearly speaks of establishment by way of [the object's] own character [and does not speak of the unique character].

[རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་བཀའ་སྩལ་ཞེས་པའི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དེ་སྐྱུ་མོང་མ་  
 ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་བྱེད་ལ་བྱེད་རིགས་པ་]འདོད་ན། མཚན་ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་  
 མེད་པ་ཞེས་པའི་ཚིག་ཟུར་གྱི་མཚན་ཉིད་དེ་སྐྱུ་མོང་མ་ཡིན་  
 པའི་མཚན་ཉིད་ལ་བྱེད་རིགས་པར་ཐལ། ]རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱང་  
 བཀའ་སྩལ་ཞེས་པའི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་དེ་སྐྱུ་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་བྱེད་ལ་བྱེད་  
 རིགས་པ་[འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར། [མཚན་ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་པ་ཞེས་པའི་ཚིག་ཟུར་  
 གྱི་མཚན་ཉིད་དེ་སྐྱུ་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་ཉིད་ལ་བྱེད་རིགས་པ་]འདོད་ན།  
 མདོ་ལས། རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་རྣམ་པར་གནས་པ་ནི་མ་ཡིན་  
 པས། ཞེས་གསུངས་པ་མི་འཐད་པར་ཐལ། [མཚན་ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་  
 པ་ཞེས་པའི་ཚིག་ཟུར་གྱི་མཚན་ཉིད་དེ་སྐྱུ་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་ཉིད་ལ་བྱེད་  
 རིགས་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར། འདི་ཉིད་ལས། མདོ་དེ་ཉིད་ལས་ཀྱུན་  
 བཏགས་ཀྱི་སྐབས་སུ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་ལ་གསལ་  
 བར་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར་དང་། ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་ཕྱིར།

*Comment:* Tsong-kha-pa's cogent point is that the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*, when describing how imputational natures are character-non-natures, says that they “do not subsist by way of their own character” (*rang gi mtshan nyid kyis rnam par gnas pa*

<sup>a</sup> Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 79. The *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* (*Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 86) says:

Those [imputational characters] are characters posited by names and terminology and do not subsist by way of their own character. Therefore, they are said to be “character-non-natures.”

*ni ma yin pa, svalakṣaṇena avyavasthitam*),<sup>a</sup> that is to say, they are not established by way of their own character; the sūtra does not speak about the defining character of an object.

This clear identification in the sūtra itself is the pivot of Tsong-kha-pa's argument (in his chapter on the Autonomy School) that when Bhāvaviveka says, in the context of criticizing the Mind-Only reading of this passage, that to deny "character" of imputational natures is a deprecation, he indicates that he holds that existent imputational natures, such as uncompounded space, are established by way of their own character. Once Bhāvaviveka holds that even imputational natures are established by way of their own character, he must hold that all phenomena are established this way. It then becomes crucial to determine what Bhāvaviveka means by "establishment by way of its own character," Tsong-kha-pa's answer being that it means that an object is established from its own side, with the consequence that when an object is sought among its bases of designation, it is found.

Furthermore, it [absurdly] follows that **the presentation of the character-non-nature with respect to the imputational nature is not logically feasible** because **the unique character of the imputational nature exists**, because Tsong-kha-pa's *The Essence of Eloquence* says:<sup>b</sup>

and since **even imputational factors have a unique characterization**, there would be the fallacy that **the character-non-nature could not be explained with respect to imputational factors**.

གཞན་ཡང་། གུན་བཏགས་ལ་མཚན་ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་པའི་  
 རྣམ་བཞག་མི་འབྲང་པར་ཐལ། གུན་བཏགས་ཀྱི་སྐྱེ་མོང་མ་  
 ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཡོད་པའི་སྤྱིར་ཏེ། འདི་ཉིད་ལས། གུན་  
 བཏགས་ལ་སྐྱེ་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་མཚན་བྱེད་ཡོད་པས་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ངོ་བོ་ཉིད་མེད་པ་གུན་བཏགས་ལ་བཤད་དུ་མི་རུང་བའི་  
 ལྷོན་དུ་འགྲུབ་པའི་སྤྱིར་རོ། ། ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་སྤྱིར།

*Comment:* Imputational natures have the unique characteristic, or

<sup>a</sup> Lamotte, *Samdhinirmocana*, 68 [4], n. 1.

<sup>b</sup> Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 79.

definition, of **that which is just imputed by conceptuality** (*rtog pas btags tsam*).<sup>a</sup> Therefore, if the absence of “character” mentioned in Buddha’s answer to Paramārthasamudgata’s question when discussing imputational natures merely referred to the non-existence of a unique characterization, such an absence could not be posited with respect to imputational natures, since they do indeed have a unique characterization. However, as is obvious in the next chapter, one of the main points of the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought* is that imputational natures are non-natures in terms of “character,” and thus “character” in that context cannot refer to a unique or uncommon character.

Unpacking Debate 9 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa’s Positions [99]	
1	<p>It is not reasonable to take “own-character” in the statement, “The Supramundane Victor pronounced the own-character” as the unique character even though the Chinese <i>Great Commentary</i> [on the “<i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i>” by Wonch’uk] explains it that way [as the unique character] because Tsong-kha-pa’s <i>The Essence of Eloquence</i> says:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">In the Chinese <i>Great Commentary</i>, and so forth, the explanation of “own-character” here as the unique character [of the aggregates and so forth] is not reasonable.</p>
2	<p>The statement in the <i>Sutra</i> [<i>Unraveling the Thought</i>], “does not subsist by way of its own character,” is logically feasible because it is not reasonable to take “character” in the phrase “character-non-nature” as the unique character because Tsong-kha-pa’s <i>The Essence of Eloquence</i> says:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">For the sūtra itself at the point of [speaking about] imputational factors clearly speaks of establishment by way of [the object’s] own character [and does not speak of the unique character].</p>
3	<p>If the “character” of the character-non-nature with respect to imputational natures were its unique character, then since the unique character of imputational natures—<b>that which is just imputed by conceptuality</b> (<i>rtog pas btags tsam</i>)—exists, the presentation of the character-non-nature with respect to imputational natures could not be made!</p>

<sup>a</sup> Gung-ru Chō-jung’s *Garland of White Lotuses*, 20a.4.

## 2) PRESENTATION OF OUR OWN SYSTEM

### གཉིས་པ་རང་ལུགས་ནི།

There is a way in which Paramārthasamudgata questions the Teacher in order to dispel contradiction in the sūtras<sup>a</sup> because Paramārthasamudgata’s explicitly asks this question about the middle wheel indicated here:

[Supramundane Victor,] in the first wheel as indicated here, you pronounced many times the words of sūtra:

The entities of compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as [their attributes of] production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist, exist.

In the middle wheel of the teaching as indicated here, you pronounced many times the words of sūtra:

Production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character do not exist, do not exist, in phenomena ranging from forms through exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects.

If those two were left literally as they are, they would be contradictory, but since the Teacher does not have contradiction, of what were you thinking when in the middle wheel indicated here you spoke in that way [that production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character do not exist, do not exist, in phenomena ranging from forms through exalted-knowers-of-all-aspects]? And this implicitly asks, “Of what were you thinking when in the first wheel indicated here you spoke in that way [that production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist, exist, in compounded phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment]?”

དོན་དམ་ཡང་དག་འཕགས་ཀྱིས་སྟོན་པ་ལ་མདོ་སྡེ་ལ་འགལ་  
སྟོང་གི་ངོ་བོ་ལ་ཞུས་ཚུལ་ཡོད་དེ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་

<sup>a</sup> For some fine point, see Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, Issue #56, 143-146.

བོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་འདུས་བྱས་  
 གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་ལ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་དང་  
 རྗེ་འགག་སོགས་ཡོད་ཡོད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་ལན་གྲངས་མང་  
 བོར་བཀའ་སྩལ། འདྲིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་བར་བར་གཟུགས་  
 [19a]ནས་རྣམ་མཁུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་ལ་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་རྗེ་འགག་སོགས་མེད་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་  
 ཚིག་ལན་གྲངས་དུ་མར་བཀའ་སྩལ། འདྲི་གཉིས་སྐྱ་སོར་  
 བཞག་ན་འགལ་ནའང་སྟོན་པ་ལ་འགལ་བ་མི་མངའ་བས།  
 འདྲིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་བར་བར་[གཟུགས་ནས་རྣམ་མཁུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་  
 ཚོས་རྣམས་ལ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་རྗེ་འགག་སོགས་མེད་མེད་ཅེས་]དེ་  
 ལྟར་གསུངས་པ་དེ་གང་ལ་དགོངས་ནས་གསུངས་ཞེས་དངོས་  
 གུ་ལྟུང་ནས། འདྲིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་བོར་[གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་  
 ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་འདུས་བྱས་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་ལ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 པའི་ངོ་བོ་དང་རྗེ་འགག་སོགས་ཡོད་ཡོད་ཅེས་]དེ་ལྟར་གསུངས་པ་དེ་གང་  
 ལ་དགོངས་ནས་གསུངས་ཞེས་དོན་གྱིས་ལྟུང་པ་དེ་སྐབས་  
 འདྲིའི་དྲི་བ་ལྟུང་ཚུལ་ཡིན་པའི་ཕྱིར།

Paramārthasamudgata does not ask this upon a qualm—thinking that the literal renderings of the first two wheels are discordant—having been generated in him, because he asks this in order that such [a qualm thinking that the literal renderings of the first two wheels are discordant] which will arise in later trainees might be cleared away.

དོན་དམ་ཡང་དག་འཕགས་ལ་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་བོ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་  
 རྗེས་ཟིན་མི་མཐུན་སྟམ་པའི་དོགས་པ་སྐྱེས་ནས་ལྟུང་པ་མ་

ཡིན་ཏེ། འོགས་པ་[འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་སྐྱེས་ཟིན་མི་མཐུན་སྐྱེས་པའི་  
འོགས་པ་]དེ་འདྲ་བྱི་རབས་ཀྱི་གདུལ་བྱ་ལ་འབྱུང་བ་སེལ་བའི་  
ཆེད་དུ་ལྷུས་པ་ཡིན་པའི་བྱིར།

### 3) DISPELLING OBJECTIONS

གསུམ་པ་རྗེས་པ་སྤོང་བ་ལ་

10. *Someone says:*<sup>a</sup> It follows that the distinction is logically feasible that in the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] it is taught that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them—without explicitly teaching that these [phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment] are established by way of their own character because such a way of questioning [about the first wheel] is logically feasible. If you accept [that the distinction is logically feasible that in the first wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*) it is taught that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them—without explicitly teaching that these (phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment) are established by way of their own character], it follows that the Hearer Schools, intended trainees of that [teaching], assert in that way [that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them] because you accept [that the distinction is logically feasible that in the first wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*) it is taught that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them—without explicitly teaching that these (phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment) are established by way of their own character].

ཁོ་ན་རེ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་ཕོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་  
སྤོང་གས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་རྣམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞིན་  
གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན།

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 19a.4; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 14b.6; 2008 Taipei reprint, 25.15. See also *Absorption*, #51, 128-129.



[གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་]དེ་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་  
 ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་མ་བསྟན་པའི་ཁྱད་པར་འཐད་པར་  
 ཐལ། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེའི་ངོ་བོ་བ་ལུས་ཚུལ་འཐད་པའི་ཕྱིར། [འདིར་  
 བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་རྣམས་  
 རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན།  
 དེ་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་མ་བསྟན་པའི་ཁྱད་པར་འཐད་  
 པ་]འདོད་ན། **དེའི་ཚེད་དུ་བྱ་བའི་གདུལ་བྱ་ཉན་ཐོས་སྡེ་པ་**  
**རྣམས་ཀྱིས་**[གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་རྣམས་རང་འཛིན་  
 རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་]དེ་ལྟར་ཁས་ལེན་པར་  
 ཐལ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་  
 གྱི་ཚས་རྣམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་  
 དངོས་སུ་བསྟན། དེ་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་མ་བསྟན་པའི་  
 ཁྱད་པར་འཐད་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར་ན་

*Our response:* [That the distinction is logically feasible that in the first wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*) it is taught that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them—without explicitly teaching that these (phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment) are established by way of their own character] does not entail [that the Hearer Schools, intended trainees of that (teaching) assert in that way (that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them)].

If you [incorrectly] accept [that the Hearer Schools, the intended trainees of that (teaching), assert in that way that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them] it [absurdly] follows that those [Hearer Schools] assert the eighteen constituents in that way [as established by way of their

own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them] because you [incorrectly] accept [that the Hearer Schools, the intended trainees of that (teaching), assert in that way that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them]. If you [incorrectly] accept [that those Hearer Schools assert the eighteen constituents in that way as established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them], it [absurdly] follows that [those Hearer Schools] assert the phenomenon-constituent in that way [as established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it] because you [incorrectly] accept [that those Hearer Schools assert the eighteen constituents in that way as established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them].

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་  
 རྣམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་  
 བསྟན། དེ་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་མ་བསྟན་པའི་ཁྱད་པར་  
 འཐད་ན། དེའི་ཚེད་དུ་བྱ་བའི་གདུལ་བྱ་ཉན་ཐོས་ལྡེ་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་དེ་ལྟར་ཁས་ལེན་  
 པས་]མ་ཁྱབ། [དེའི་ཚེད་དུ་བྱ་བའི་གདུལ་བྱ་ཉན་ཐོས་ལྡེ་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་གཟུགས་  
 རས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་  
 གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་དེ་ལྟར་ཁས་ལེན་པར་]འདོད་ན། [ཉན་ཐོས་ལྡེ་པ་]དེས་  
 ཁམས་བཙོ་བརྒྱད་[རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་  
 གྲུབ་པ་]དེ་ལྟར་ཁས་ལེན་པར་ཐལ།<sup>[19b]</sup> [དེའི་ཚེད་དུ་བྱ་བའི་གདུལ་བྱ་ཉན་  
 ཐོས་ལྡེ་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་གཟུགས་རས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་  
 འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་ལྟར་ཁས་ལེན་  
 པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར། [ཉན་ཐོས་ལྡེ་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་ཁམས་བཙོ་བརྒྱད་རང་འཛིན་  
 རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་ཁས་ལེན་པ་]འདོད་ན།  
 ཚོས་ཁམས་[རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 པ་]དེ་ལྟར་ཁས་ལེན་པར་ཐལ། [དེའི་ཚེད་དུ་བྱ་བའི་གདུལ་བྱ་ཉན་ཐོས་ལྡེ་

པ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་ཁམས་བཅོ་བརྒྱད་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་དེ་ལྷོ་ཁས་ལེན་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

*Comment:* The eighteen constituents (*khams, dhātu*) are the six objects, the six sense powers, and the six consciousnesses, each of which is called a constituent:

*The Eighteen Constituents*

<i>Object</i>	<i>Sense power</i>	<i>Consciousness</i>
form	eye sense power	eye consciousness
sound	ear sense power	ear consciousness
odor	nose sense power	nose consciousness
taste	tongue sense power	tongue consciousness
tangible object	body sense power	body consciousness
phenomenon	mind sense power	mental consciousness

“Phenomenon-constituent,” the sixth category of objects, refers to *other* phenomena, those that are not sense objects but are objects only of the mental consciousness, such as impermanence and emptiness. Since sense objects are also objects of a mental consciousness, the category “phenomenon-constituent” does not include all objects of a mental consciousness—just its exclusive objects among which mental factors and permanent phenomena, such as uncompounded space, are included.

Jam-yang-shay-pa cites “phenomenon-constituent” here because as a category that includes both permanent and impermanent members, the category is considered to be permanent, and since the Hearer Schools do not assert that the permanent are established by way of their own character, they would not *assert* that the phenomenon-constituent is established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it since the very words would violate their own assertions. In the next debate Jam-yang-shay-pa proceeds to show that nevertheless the Hearer Schools come to assert such, that is to say, they are reduced to asserting this.

It is not reasonable to accept [that those Hearer Schools assert the phenomenon-constituent in that way as established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it] because the distinction is logically feasible that although those [Hearer Schools] do not *assert* that uncompounded phenomena such as space and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual

consciousnesses apprehending them, those [Hearer Schools] assert that those [uncompounded phenomena such as space and so forth] are established through the force of their own measure of subsistence<sup>a</sup> as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them, because if those [uncompounded phenomena such as space and so forth] are not established through the force of their own measure of subsistence, those [Hearer Schools] do not know how to posit them as existing, and although [the Hearer Schools do not] impute the term “own-character” [that is, “established by way of its own character”] to those [uncompounded phenomena such as space and so forth], according to the Mind-Only School those [Hearer Schools] come to assert that those [uncompounded phenomena such as space and so forth] are established by way of their own character [as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses].<sup>b</sup>

[ཉན་ཐོས་ལྗེ་པ་དེས་ཚོས་ཁམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 གྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་ཁས་ལེན་པར་]འདོད་མི་རིགས་ཏེ། [ཉན་ཐོས་ལྗེ་པ་]དེས་ནམ་  
 མཁའ་སོགས་འདུས་མ་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་  
 ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་ཁས་ལེན་གྲང་།  
 [ཉན་ཐོས་ལྗེ་པ་]དེས་[ནམ་མཁའ་སོགས་འདུས་མ་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚོས་]དེ་རྣམས་  
 རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་གནས་ཚུན་གྱི་དབང་  
 གིས་གྲུབ་པར་འདོད་པའི་བྱུང་པར་འཐད་པའི་བྱིར། [ཉན་ཐོས་ལྗེ་  
 པ་]དེས་[ནམ་མཁའ་སོགས་འདུས་མ་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚོས་]དེ་རྣམས་རང་གི་གནས་  
 ཚུན་གྱི་དབང་གིས་མ་གྲུབ་ན་ཡོད་པར་འཛིན་མི་ཤེས་ཤིང་[ནམ་  
 མཁའ་སོགས་འདུས་མ་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚོས་]དེ་ལ་རང་མཚན་གྱི་མིང་མི་འདོགས་  
 གྲང་། སེམས་ཅམ་པ་ལྟར་ན་[ཉན་ཐོས་ལྗེ་པ་]དེས་[ནམ་མཁའ་སོགས་  
 འདུས་མ་བྱས་ཀྱི་ཚོས་]དེ་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་  
 ཁས་བླངས་སོང་བའི་བྱུང་པར་འཐད་པའི་བྱིར་ཏེ།

<sup>a</sup> *rang gi gnas tshod kyī dbang gis grub pa*; or “established through the force of its own status.”

<sup>b</sup> This bracketed material is from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 129.

*Comment:* Gung-ru Chö-jung<sup>a</sup> and Jam-yang-shay-pa<sup>b</sup> have made the distinction that the literal level of the first wheel of the teaching (as described here by Paramārthasamudgata in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*) explicitly teaches that phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses. This means that the intended trainees of the first wheel must assert such, in which case the Great Exposition School and the Sūtra School must do so. However, there is a problem: According to these scholars, it is clear that at least the Sūtra School Following Reasoning does not assert that permanent phenomena are established by way of their own character, and if permanent phenomena, such as uncompounded space and nirvāṇa, are not asserted to be established by way of their own character, there does not seem to be any way that this school could assert them to be **established by way of their own character** as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses.

In answer to this, Gung-ru Chö-jung and Jam-yang-shay-pa make the distinction that the Sūtra School Following Reasoning asserts that such non-disintegrating permanent phenomena are established **through the force of their own measure of subsistence**<sup>c</sup> as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses. This is because for this school if any phenomenon minimally is not established through the force of its own mode of subsistence, they cannot posit it as even existing. Thus, although the Sūtra School Following Reasoning does not use the term “established by way of its own character” to depict existent imputational natures, in the eyes of the Mind-Only School the Sūtra School Following Reasoning **comes to assert** that all phenomena are **established by way of their own character** as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses. Therefore, even though Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra who are the intended trainees of the first wheel **assert** that permanent phenomena are not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses, according to the Mind-Only School they have not

<sup>a</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung’s *Garland of White Lotus*, 13a.1-15a.6.

<sup>b</sup> Jam-yang-shay-pa’s *Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*, 38.1-40.2. Jam-yang-shay-pa’s presentation of the following points, while based on Gung-ru Chö-jung’s, is for the most part clearer.

<sup>c</sup> *rang gi gnas tshod kyi dbang gis grub pa.*

realized such and thus still need to be taught it.<sup>a</sup>

To make this distinction in a different way: Despite the fact that Proponents of Sūtra realize that permanent phenomena are not established by way of their own character, this does not entail that they have realized that permanent phenomena are not established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses. One might think that just the opposite would be true since “established by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness” *seems* to be a sub-set of “established by way of its own character,” and when, for instance, one ascertains that products are devoid of permanent sounds in general (there being no such thing as a permanent sound), one necessarily ascertains that products are devoid of specific permanent sounds such as of a guitar.<sup>b</sup> According to these scholars, however, that principle does not apply in this case. They do not spell out their reasoning, but it must be that “established by way of its own character as the referent of a conceptual consciousness” is simply not a sub-set of “established by way of its own character” because the former is more subtle.

For, Tsong-kha-pa's *The Essence of Eloquence* says:<sup>c</sup>

<sup>a</sup> This is the position of the Go-mang tradition. Jay-tśün Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan holds that the Proponents of Sūtra assert that all phenomena are indeed established by way of their own character and thus they can hold that all phenomena are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses. He also makes the point (*General-Meaning Commentary*, 9b.3 and 10a.2-10a.5) that a sūtra explicitly teaching that phenomena are established by way of their own character is a sūtra explicitly teaching that phenomena are established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses. (It is apparent that the Pañ-chen Sö-nam-drag-pa tradition also holds this latter point.) Since terms (*sgra*) and conceptual consciousnesses (*rtog pa*) are held to operate in the same way, this position raises the question of whether a conceptual consciousness apprehending forms as established by way of their own character as the referents of their respective conceptual consciousnesses apprehends forms as established by way of their own character. However, as Jay-tśün Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan says, this cannot be admitted because then one conceptual consciousness would be both incorrect and correct.

<sup>b</sup> Gung-ru Chö-jung (15a.1) and Jam-yang-shay-pa (40.2) cite the dictum from Gyal-tshab's *Illumination of the Path to Liberation* (*thar lam sel byed*), “It is established that any ascertainment of [something] as empty of a generality is necessarily an ascertainment that it is empty of a particular” (*spyis stong par nges na/ bye brag gis stong par nges pas khyab pa 'grub bo*).

<sup>c</sup> Hopkins, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 210.

The two Proponents of [Truly Existent External] Objects<sup>a</sup> do not know how to posit forms and so forth as existing if their being established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses and as the foundations of imputing terminology is negated. This is not the own-character that is renowned to the Epistemologists.<sup>b</sup>

འདི་ཉིད་ལས། དོན་སྣ་གཉིས་ཀྱིས་གཟུགས་སྐྱབས་རྟོག་པའི་ཞིན་གཞི་དང་བརྒྱུ་འདོགས་པའི་གནས་སྲུ་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་སྐྱབས་པ་ཞིགས་ན་དེ་དག་ཡོད་པར་འཇོག་མི་ཤེས་ཏེ། ཚང་མ་པ་ལ་གྲགས་པའི་རང་མཚན་མ་ཡིན་ཅོ། །ཞེས་པ་དང་།

*Comment:*<sup>c</sup> According to A-khu Lo-drö-gya-tsho,<sup>d</sup> Tsong-kha-pa is making the point that this sort of own-character is not limited to those objects that perform functions (a category that excludes permanent phenomena) since—according to the Mind-Only School—in the Great Exposition School and the Sūtra School all phenomena, both the permanent (which are **not** able to produce effects) and the impermanent, come to be established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses and as the foundations of the imputation of terminology. Therefore, in this context “own-character” refers to establishment through the force of objects’ own status (*rang gi gnas tshod kyi dbang gis grub pa*) and not to the ability to perform the function of creating an effect, as it does in the system of the “Epistemologists,” which here connotes the Proponents of Sūtra Following Reasoning, who assert that the definition of own-character is that which is ultimately able to perform a function (*don dam par don byed nus pa*). In other contexts, “Epistemologists” refers also to the Proponents of Mind-Only that follow Dignāga and Dharmakīrti).

<sup>a</sup> That is, the Great Exposition School and the Sūtra School.

<sup>b</sup> *tshad ma pa, prāmāṇika*.

<sup>c</sup> Drawn from Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 129. See also Issue #40, 121-124.

<sup>d</sup> *Precious Lamp*, 259.2.

and Khay-drub-ge-leg-pal-zang's *Compilation on Emptiness [Opening the Eyes of the Fortunate]* says:<sup>a</sup>

The Proponents of Sūtra themselves do not impute the name “own-character”<sup>b</sup> in their assertion that space, nirvāṇa, and so forth are established through the force of space's, nirvāṇa's, and so forth's own measure of subsistence<sup>c</sup> as the foundations of reference of the names for space, the extinguishment of contamination, and so forth. However, according to the Proponents of Mind-Only, the Proponents of Sūtra have come to assert the meaning of own-character. This is the meaning [of Tsong-kha-pa's statement]. Realizing this has very great import.

རྣམ་ཐུན་ལས། རྣམ་མཁའ་དང་སྤྱང་འདས་སོགས་རྣམ་མཁའ་  
 དང་ཟག་པ་ཟད་པ་སོགས་ཀྱི་མིང་གང་ལ་འཇུག་པའི་གནས་སྤྱི་  
 རྣམ་མཁའ་དང་སྤྱང་འདས་སོགས་རང་གི་གནས་ཚུན་ཀྱི་དབང་  
 གིས་ཀྱབ་པར་མདོ་སྡེ་པ་འདོད་པ་དེ་ལ་མདོ་སྡེ་པ་རང་གིས་རང་  
 མཚན་གྱི་མིང་མ་བཏགས་ཀྱང་། སེམས་ཅམ་པ་སྣང་ན་མདོ་སྡེ་  
 པས་དེ་ལ་རང་མཚན་གྱི་དོན་ཁས་སྤངས་པར་སོང་བའི་དོན་དེ་  
 འདི་རྣམས་པ་ཤིན་ཏུ་གནད་ཆེ་བར་ཡོད་དོ། ། ཞེས་གསུངས་  
 པའི་སྟེན།

### Unpacking Debate 10 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa's Positions

[110]

1

The distinction is logically feasible that in the first wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*):

- it is taught that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them

<sup>a</sup> *mkhas grub dge legs dpal bzang, stong thun chen mo* (Madhyamika Text Series, vol. 1, 1972), 58.1-2.

<sup>b</sup> That is, “established by way of its own character.”

<sup>c</sup> Or, “own status.”



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• without explicitly teaching that these phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character.</li> </ul> <p>Nevertheless, the Hearer Schools, who are intended trainees of the first wheel teaching, do not assert in that way that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them.</p>
2	<p>If the Hearer Schools asserted that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them, they would have to assert that the eighteen constituents in that way [as established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them, in which case they would have to assert that the phenomenon-constituent is established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it.</p>
3	<p>However, that is not reasonable because although those Hearer Schools <i>do not assert</i> that uncompounded phenomena such as uncompounded space and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them, those [Hearer Schools] <i>do assert</i> that those uncompounded phenomena such as uncompounded space and so forth are established through the force of their own measure of subsistence as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them, because if those uncompounded phenomena such as space and so forth are not established through the force of their own measure of subsistence, those [Hearer Schools] do not know how to posit them as existing.</p>
4	<p>The Hearer Schools do not impute the term “own-character,” that is, “established by way of its own character,” to those uncompounded phenomena such as space and so forth, but according to the Mind-Only School those Hearer Schools <i>come to assert</i> that those uncompounded phenomena such as space and so forth are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses.</p>

**II. Also, someone says:**<sup>a</sup> It follows that the two, Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra—who are intended trainees of the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*]<sup>1</sup>—do not need to be taught that the phenomenon-constituent is established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it because [both of] those [Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra] realize that [the phenomenon-constituent] is not established that way [by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it] because [both of] those [Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra] assert that [the phenomenon-constituent] is not established that way [by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it].

ཡང་ཁོ་ན་རེ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོས་རང་གི་ཚེད་དུ་  
 བྱ་བའི་གདུལ་བྱ་བྱེ་མདོ་གཉིས་<sup>[20a]</sup>ལ་ཚོས་ཁམས་རང་འཛིན་  
 རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་སྟོན་མི་  
 དགོས་པར་ཐལ། [བྱེ་མདོ་གཉིས་པོ་]དེས་[ཚོས་ཁམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་  
 ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་]དེ་ལྟར་དུ་མ་གྲུབ་པར་རྟོགས་པའི་  
 ཕྱིར། [བྱེ་མདོ་གཉིས་པོ་]དེས་[ཚོས་ཁམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་  
 གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པ་]དེ་ལྟར་དུ་ཁས་ལེན་པའི་ཕྱིར་ན་

*Our response:* [That both of those Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra assert that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it] does not entail [that both of those Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra realize that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it].

[བྱེ་མདོ་གཉིས་པོ་དེས་དེ་ལྟར་དུ་ཁས་ལེན་ན། བྱེ་མདོ་གཉིས་པོ་དེས་དེ་ལྟར་དུ་མ་  
 གྲུབ་པར་རྟོགས་པས་]མ་བྱུང།

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 19b.6; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 15a.7; 2008 Taipei reprint, 26.15. See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 130.

**Unpacking Debate 11 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa’s Positions 11**

[120]

1	<p>The two, Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra—who are intended trainees of the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i>—need to be taught that the phenomenon-constituent is established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it despite their <i>asserting</i> that the phenomenon-constituent is not established that way by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it, because, despite their assertion, they do not <i>realize</i> that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it.</p>
---	--

**12. Also, someone says:**<sup>a</sup> It follows that those [Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra] realize that the phenomenon-constituent is not established that way [by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it] because those [Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra] realize that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character.

ཡང་ཁོ་ན་རེ། བྱེ་མདོ་གཉིས་པོ་དེས་ཚེས་ཁམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་དེ་ལྟར་དུ་མ་གྲུབ་པར་རྟོགས་པར་ཐལ། བྱེ་མདོ་གཉིས་པོ་དེས་ཚེས་ཁམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པར་རྟོགས་པའི་ཕྱིར་ན་

*Our response:* [That Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra realize that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character] does not entail [that Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra realize that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it].

བྱེ་མདོ་གཉིས་པོ་དེས་ཚེས་ཁམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པར་རྟོགས་ན། བྱེ་

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 20a.1; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 15b.1; 2008 Taipei reprint, 26.18. See Hopkins, *Absorption in No External World*, 130.

མདོ་གཉིས་པོ་དེས་ཚོས་ཁམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 གྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པར་རྟོགས་པས་]མ་བྱུང།

*The opponent's rejoinder:* It follows [that realizing that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character] entails [realizing that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it] because ascertainment that [the phenomenon-constituent] is empty of a generality of imputational phenomena, establishment by way of its own character, entails ascertainment that it is empty of a particular, establishment by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it. It follows [that ascertainment that (the phenomenon-constituent) is empty of a generality of imputational phenomena, establishment by way of its own character, entails ascertainment that it is empty of a particular, establishment by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it] because ascertainment that products in general are empty of the permanence of sound<sup>a</sup> entails ascertainment that products are empty of a particular, the permanence of the sound of a lute.

[ཚོས་ཁམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པར་རྟོགས་ན། ཚོས་ཁམས་རང་འཛིན་  
 རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་མ་གྲུབ་པར་རྟོགས་པས་]དེ་ལ་བྱུབ་  
 པར་ཐལ། ཀུན་བཏགས་ཀྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་སྤྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 གྱིས་གྲུབ་པས་སྟོང་པར་ངེས་ན། བྱེ་བྲག་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་  
 ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་པས་སྟོང་པར་ངེས་པས་  
 བྱུབ་པའི་ཕྱིར། [ཀུན་བཏགས་ཀྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་སྤྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་  
 པས་སྟོང་པར་ངེས་ན། བྱེ་བྲག་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
 གྱིས་གྲུབ་པས་སྟོང་པར་ངེས་པས་བྱུབ་པ་]དེར་ཐལ། བྱུབ་པ་དེ་སྤྱིར་སྤྱིར་  
 ཏྲག་པས་སྟོང་པར་ངེས་ན། བྱེ་བྲག་པི་མང་གི་སྤྱིར་ཏྲག་པས་སྟོང་  
 པར་ངེས་པས་བྱུབ་པའི་ཕྱིར་ན་

<sup>a</sup> The permanence of sound does not exist.

*Our response:* [That ascertainment that products in general are empty of the permanence of sound<sup>a</sup> entails ascertainment that products are empty of a particular, the permanence of the sound of a lute] does not entail [that ascertainment that (the phenomenon-constituent) is empty of a generality of imputational phenomena, establishment by way of its own character, entails ascertainment that it is empty of a particular, establishment by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it]. The sign [which is that ascertainment that products in general are empty of the permanence of sound entails ascertainment that products are empty of a particular, the permanence of the sound of a lute] is established because Gyal-tshab-dar-ma-rin-chen’s *Clarifying the Path to Liberation* says:

It is established that ascertainment of the emptiness of a generality entails ascertainment of [its] particulars.

[བྱས་པ་དེ་སྤྱིར་སྐྱའི་རྟག་པས་སྣོང་པར་ངེས་ན། བྱེ་བྲག་པི་མང་གི་སྐྱའི་རྟག་པས་སྣོང་པར་ངེས་པས་འབྲུབ་ན། ཀུན་བཏགས་ཀྱི་ཚོས་རྣམས་ཀྱི་སྤྱི་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པས་སྣོང་པར་ངེས་ན། བྱེ་བྲག་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པས་སྣོང་པར་ངེས་པས་འབྲུབ་པས་]མ་འབྲུབ། [བྱས་པ་དེ་སྤྱིར་སྐྱའི་རྟག་པས་སྣོང་པར་ངེས་ན། བྱེ་བྲག་པི་མང་གི་སྐྱའི་རྟག་པས་སྣོང་པར་ངེས་པས་འབྲུབ་པ་]རྟགས་གྲུབ་སྟེ། ཐར་ལམ་གསལ་བྱེད་ལས། སྤྱིས་སྣོང་པར་ངེས་ན་བྱེ་བྲག་གིས་སྣོང་པར་ངེས་པས་འབྲུབ་པ་གྲུབ་པོ། ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་བྱིར།

<b>Unpacking Debate 12 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa’s Positions 12</b>	
[121]	
1	Realizing that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character does not entail realizing that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it. Hence, even though Proponents of the Great Exposition and Proponents of Sūtra realize that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character, they

<sup>a</sup> The permanence of sound does not exist.

	do not realize that the phenomenon-constituent is not established by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it.
2	Ascertainment that products in general are empty of the permanence of sound entails ascertainment that products are empty of a particular, the permanence of the sound of a lute because it is established that ascertainment of the emptiness of a generality entails ascertainment of its particulars.
3	However, establishment by way of its own character is not a generality of establishment by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it; therefore, ascertainment that the phenomenon-constituent is empty of establishment by way of its own character does not entail ascertainment that it is empty of establishment by way of its own character as the referent of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending it.

**13. Also, someone says:**<sup>a</sup> It follows that [the Supramundane Victor] in the first wheel as indicated here [in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*] pronounced **the words of sūtra**, “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as [their attributes of] production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist” because you accept [that in the first wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*) it is taught that phenomena ranging from forms to the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment are established by way of their own character as the referents of conceptual consciousnesses apprehending them].<sup>b</sup> If you accept [that (the Supramundane Victor) in the first wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*) pronounced **the words of sūtra**, “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as (their attributes of) production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist”] it follows that [the Supramundane Victor] in the first wheel pronounced, “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as [their attributes of] production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist” because you accept [that (the Supramundane Victor) in the first

<sup>a</sup> 2011 TBRC *bla brang*, 20a.4; 1987 Go-mang Lhasa, 15b.3; 2008 Taipei reprint, 27.2. See the Comment in Debate 5, p. 74, for discussion of issues raised in this debate.

<sup>b</sup> For this position see the beginning of Debate 10, p. 110.

wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*) pronounced **the words of sūtra**, “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as (their attributes of) production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist”].

ཡང་ཁོ་ན་རེ། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་  
བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་  
གྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་དང་སྐྱེ་འགག་ལ་སོགས་པ་ཡོད་ཅེས་པའི་  
མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྩལ་པར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་  
ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་རྣམས་རང་འཛིན་རྟོག་པའི་ཞེན་གཞིར་རང་  
གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་པར་དངོས་སུ་བསྟན་པ་]འདོད་པའི་ཕྱིར། [འདིར་  
བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་  
རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་དང་སྐྱེ་འགག་ལ་སོགས་པ་ཡོད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་  
ཚིག་བཀའ་སྩལ་པ་]འདོད་ན། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་  
གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་རྣམས་རང་གི་  
མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་དང་སྐྱེ་འགག་ལ་སོགས་པ་ཡོད་  
ཅེས་བཀའ་སྩལ་པར་ཐལ། [འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་  
བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་  
དང་སྐྱེ་འགག་ལ་སོགས་པ་ཡོད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྩལ་པ་]འདོད་པའི་  
ཕྱིར་ན་

*Our response:* [That (the Supramundane Victor) in the first wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*) pronounced **the words of sūtra**, “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as (their attributes of) production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist”] does not entail [that (the Supramundane Victor) in the first wheel pronounced, “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as (their

attributes of) production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist”)].

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚེས་  
 རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་དོ་བོ་དང་སྐྱེ་འགག་ལ་སོགས་པ་ཡོད་ཅེས་  
 པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྩལ་ན། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་  
 ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚེས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་དོ་བོ་དང་སྐྱེ་  
 འགག་ལ་སོགས་པ་ཡོད་ཅེས་བཀའ་སྩལ་པས་]མ་བྱུང།<sup>[20b]</sup>

*The opponent's rejoinder:* [That (the Supramundane Victor) in the first wheel as indicated here (in the *Sūtra Unraveling the Thought*) pronounced the words of sūtra, “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as (their attributes of) production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist”] entails [that (the Supramundane Victor) in the first wheel pronounced, “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as (their attributes of) production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist”)] because [the Supramundane Victor] in that first wheel pronounced the words of sūtra **teaching**, “Those [phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment] are established by way of their own character,” because [the Supramundane Victor] in that first wheel pronounced **the words of sūtra**, “Entities and so forth—that are established by way of their own character—of those [phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment]” exist.

[འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚེས་  
 རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་དོ་བོ་དང་སྐྱེ་འགག་ལ་སོགས་པ་ཡོད་ཅེས་  
 པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྩལ་ན། འདིར་བསྟན་འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོར་གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་  
 ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚེས་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་དོ་བོ་དང་སྐྱེ་  
 འགག་ལ་སོགས་པ་ཡོད་ཅེས་བཀའ་སྩལ་པས་]བྱུབ་པར་ཐལ། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་  
 པོ་]དེར་[གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚེས་]དེ་རྣམས་རང་གི་  
 མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་ཅེས་སྟོན་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྩལ་པའི་  
 ཕྱིར་ཏེ། [འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེར་[གཟུགས་ནས་བྱང་ཕྱོགས་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་



ཚེས་]དེ་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་སོགས་  
ཡོད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྩལ་པའི་སྤྱིར་ན་

*Our response:* [That (the Supramundane Victor) in that first wheel pronounced **the words of sūtra**, “Entities and so forth—that are established by way of their own character—of those (phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment) exist,”] does not entail [that (the Supramundane Victor) in that first wheel pronounced words of sūtra **teaching**, “Those (phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment) are established by way of their own character.”]

Well then, it [absurdly] follows that (the Supramundane Victor) **pronounced in the Heart Sūtra**, “Forms and so forth do not exist,” because the words of sūtra, “Those [forms and so forth] do not exist,” exist in that [Heart Sūtra]. You have [incorrectly] asserted [that the words of sūtra, “Those [forms and so forth] do not exist,” **existing** in the Heart Sūtra] entails [that the Supramundane Victor **pronounced** in the Heart Sūtra, “Forms and so forth do not exist.”]

[འཁོར་ལོ་དང་པོ་]དེར་[གཞུགས་ནས་བྱང་སྤྱོད་སོ་བདུན་གྱི་བར་གྱི་ཚེས་]དེ་  
རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པའི་ངོ་བོ་སོགས་ཡོད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་  
སྩལ་ན། དེར་དེ་རྣམས་རང་གི་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་ཅེས་སྟོན་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་  
སྩལ་པས་]མ་ཁྱབ། འོ་ན། ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་པོར་གཞུགས་སོགས་མེད་  
ཅེས་བཀའ་སྩལ་པར་ཐལ། [ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་པོ་]དེར་[གཞུགས་སོགས་]དེ་  
རྣམས་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་ཡོད་པའི་སྤྱིར། [ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་  
པོ་]དེར་[གཞུགས་སོགས་]དེ་རྣམས་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་ཡོད་ན།  
ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་པོར་གཞུགས་སོགས་མེད་ཅེས་བཀའ་སྩལ་པས་]ཁྱབ་པ་ཁས།

Moreover, it [absurdly] follows that [the Supramundane Victor] pronounced in that [Heart Sūtra] words of sūtra **teaching**, “These [forms and so forth] do not exist,” because (the Supramundane Victor) pronounced in the Heart Sūtra the words of sūtra, “These [forms and so forth] do not exist.” You have [incorrectly] asserted [that (the Supramundane Victor) pronouncing in the Heart Sūtra the words of sūtra, “These forms and so forth do not exist,”] entails [that (the Supramundane Victor) pronounced

in that *Heart Sūtra* words of sūtra **teaching**, “These forms and so forth do not exist.”] Both reasons [which are that the words of sūtra, “Those [forms and so forth] do not exist,” exist in that (*Heart Sūtra*) and that (the Supramundane Victor) pronounced in the *Heart Sūtra* the words of sūtra, “These (forms and so forth) do not exist,” are established because the words of sūtra, “Forms do not exist, sounds do not exist,” exist in the *Heart Sūtra*.

གཞན་ཡང་། [ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་པོ་]དེར་[གཞུགས་སོགས་]དེ་རྣམས་མེད་  
 ཅེས་སྟོན་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྡུལ་པར་ཐལ། [ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་  
 པོ་]དེར་[གཞུགས་སོགས་]དེ་རྣམས་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་  
 སྡུལ་པའི་ཕྱིར། [ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་པོ་]དེར་གཞུགས་སོགས་དེ་རྣམས་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་  
 མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྡུལ་ན། ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་པོ་དེར་གཞུགས་སོགས་དེ་རྣམས་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་  
 སྟོན་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྡུལ་པས་]ཁྱབ་པ་ལས། [དེར་དེ་རྣམས་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་  
 མདོ་ཚིག་ཡོད་པ་དང་། དེར་དེ་རྣམས་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྡུལ་  
 པའི་]རྟགས་གཉིས་ཀ་ལྟུང་། [ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་པོ་]དེར་གཞུགས་མེད་  
 སྟུང་མེད་ཅེས་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་ཡོད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

It is not reasonable to accept the root [consequence that (the Supramundane Victor) pronounced in the *Heart Sūtra* words of sūtra **teaching**, “Forms and so forth do not exist,”] because there is no need for such a teaching [that “Forms and so forth do not exist.”]

[ཤེས་རབ་སྣང་པོ་]དེར་གཞུགས་སོགས་མེད་ཅེས་སྟོན་པའི་མདོ་ཚིག་བཀའ་སྡུལ་  
 པ་]རྟགས་འདོད་མི་རིགས་ཏེ། [གཞུགས་སོགས་མེད་ཅེས་]དེ་ལྟར་  
 བསྟན་པ་ལ་དགོས་པ་མེད་པའི་ཕྱིར།

<b>Unpacking Debate 13 to reveal Jam-yang-shay-pa's Positions</b> [124]	
1	That the Supramundane Victor in the first wheel as indicated here in the <i>Sūtra Unraveling the Thought</i> pronounced <b>the words of sūtra</b> , “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as their attributes of production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist” does not entail that the Supramundane Victor in the first wheel pronounced, “The entities of phenomena ranging from forms through the thirty-seven harmonies with enlightenment as well as their attributes of production, cessation, and so forth that are established by way of their own character exist.”
2	That <b>the words of sūtra</b> , “Those [forms and so forth] do not exist,” exist in the <i>Heart Sūtra</i> does not entail that the Supramundane Victor pronounced in the <i>Heart Sūtra</i> , “Forms and so forth do not exist.” Nevertheless, the Supramundane Victor pronounced in the <i>Heart Sūtra</i> <b>the words of sūtra</b> , “These forms and so forth] do not exist.”
3	It is not reasonable to accept that the Supramundane Victor pronounced in the <i>Heart Sūtra</i> words of sūtra <b>teaching</b> , “Forms and so forth do not exist,” because there is no need for such a teaching that “Forms and so forth do not exist.”

# Abbreviations

“1973 Ngawang Gelek *bla brang*” = *Collected Works of 'Jam-dbyaṅs-bzhad-pa'i-rdo-rje*, vol. 14 (entire). New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1973.

“1987 Go-mang Lhasa” = *drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i mtha' dpyod 'khrul bral lung rigs bai dūr dkar pa'i gan mdzod skal bzang re ba kun skong*. Named “1987” because of being acquired in Lhasa, Tibet, at Go-mang College in 1987; published at Go-mang College, date unknown. (Complete edition, available at UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, [uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org).)

“2000 Taipei reprint of 1999 Mundgod” = *grub mtha' chen mo / grub mtha'i rnam bshad rang gzhan grub mtha' kun dang zab don mchog tu gsal ba kun bzang zhing gi nyi ma lung rigs rgya mtsho skye dgu'i re ba kun skong*, Mundgod, India: Drepung Gomang Library, 1999; rpt. Taipei, Taiwan: The Corporate Body of the Buddha Educational Foundation, n.d. [this edition is based on the Tra-shi-khyil blockprint].

“2008 Taipei reprint” = *drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i mtha' dpyod 'khrul bral lung rigs bai dūr dkar pa'i gan mdzod skal bzang re ba kun skong*. Taipei reprint (published by the Corporate Body of the Buddha Educational Foundation, Taipei, Taiwan, 2008) of the 1999 codex (Mundgod, India: Go-mang Library, 1999) based on the 1995 Mundgod revision (Mundgod, India: Go-mang College, 1995) of the 1973 Ngawang Gelek *bla brang* edition (New Delhi, India: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1973).

“2011 TBRC *bla brang*” = *drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i mtha' dpyod 'khrul bral lung rigs bai dūr dkar pa'i ngan mdzod skal bzang re ba kun skong*, TBRC W22186.10: 1-288, which is a PDF of: *bla brang bkra shis 'khyil, bla brang brka shis 'khyil dgon*, publishing date unknown.

“*lha sa*” = *lha sa bka' 'gyur*. TBRC W26071, which is a PDF of: *Zhol bka' 'gyur par khang*, Lhasa, Tibet, 1934.

“*Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive*” = *Jam-yang-shay-pa's Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive / Decisive Analysis of (Tsong-kha-pa's) "Differentiating the Interpretable and the Definitive": Storehouse of White Lapis-Lazuli of Scripture and Reasoning Free from Mistake, Fulfilling the Hopes of the Fortunate (drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i mtha' dpyod 'khrul bral lung rigs bai dūr dkar pa'i ngan mdzod skal bzang re ba kun skong)*.

“Peking” = *Tibetan Tripiṭaka: Peking Edition kept in the Library of the Otani University, Kyoto*. Edited by Daisetz Teitarō Suzuki. Tokyo, Kyoto, Japan: Tibetan Tripiṭaka Research Foundation, 1955-1961.

“sde dge” = *sde dge bstan ’gyur. sDe dge Tibetan Tripiṭaka—bsTan ḥgyur preserved at the Faculty of Letters, University of Tokyo*. Edited by Z. Yamaguchi, et al. Tokyo: Tokyo University Press, 1977-1984. The catalogue numbers are from *Complete Catalogue of the Tibetan Buddhist Canons*. Edited by Hukuji Ui. Sendai, Japan: Tohoku University, 1934. And *A Catalogue of the Tohoku University Collection of Tibetan Works on Buddhism*. Edited by Yensho Kanakura. Sendai, Japan: Tohoku University, 1953. TBRC W23703, which is a PDF of: Delhi: Karmapae Chodhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1977.

“TBRC” = Tibetan Buddhist Resource Center (<http://www.tbrc.org>).

“Tenets” = Jam-yang-shay-pa’s *Great Exposition of Tenets / Explanation of “Tenets”: Sun of the Land of Samantabhadra Brilliantly Illuminating All of Our Own and Others’ Tenets and the Meaning of the Profound [Emptiness], Ocean of Scripture and Reasoning Fulfilling All Hopes of All Beings* (*grub mtha’chen mo / grub mtha’i rnam bshad rang gzhan grub mtha’kun dang zab don mchog tu gsal ba kun bzang zhing gi nyi ma lung rigs rgya mtsho skye dgu’i re ba kun skong*).



# Bibliography

Sūtras are listed alphabetically by English title in the first section; the terms “glorious” and “supreme” at the beginning of titles are often dropped in the Bibliography. Indian and Tibetan treatises are listed alphabetically by author in the second section; other works are listed alphabetically by author in the third section. Works mentioned in the first or second sections are not repeated in the third section.

## 1. SŪTRAS

### *Condensed Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*

prajñāpāramitāsañcayagāthā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa sdud pa tshigs su bcad pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bka' 'gyur (sde dge par phud, 13)*. TBRC W22084.34:3-40 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

P735, vol. 21.

Sanskrit and Tibetan: Akira Yuyama. *Prajñā-pāramitā-ratna-guṇa-saṃcaya-gāthā (Sanskrit Recension A): Edited with an Introduction, Bibliographical Notes and a Tibetan Version from Tunhuang*. London: Cambridge University Press, 1976.

Sanskrit: E. E. Obermiller. *Prajñāpāramitā-ratnaguṇa-sañcayagāthā*. Osnabrück, Germany: Biblio Verlag, 1970. Also: P. L. Vaidya. *Mahāyāna-sūtra-saṃgraha*. Part I. Buddhist Sanskrit Texts, 17. Darbhanga, India: Mithila Institute, 1961.

English translation: Edward Conze. *The Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines & Its Verse Summary*. Bolinas, Calif.: Four Seasons Foundation, 1973.

### *Eight Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*

aṣṭasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa brgyad stong pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bka' 'gyur (sde dge par phud, 12)*. TBRC W22084.33:3-573 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 734, vol. 21.

Sanskrit: P. L. Vaidya. *Aṣṭasāhasrika Prajñāpāramitā, with Haribhadra's Commentary called Ālokā*. Buddhist Sanskrit Texts 4. Darbhanga, India: Mithila Institute, 1960.

English translation: Edward Conze. *The Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines & Its Verse Summary*. Bolinas, Calif.: Four Seasons Foundation, 1973.

### *Five Hundred Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*

āryapañcaśatikāprajñāpāramitā

'phags pa shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa lnga brgya pa

*bka' 'gyur (sde dge par phud, 15)*. TBRC W22084. 103 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

P0738, vol. 21.

English translation: Edward Conze. *The Short Prajñāpāramitā Texts*. London: Luzac, 1973.

### *One Hundred Fifty Modes of the Perfection of Wisdom*

prajñāpāramitānayaśatapañcāśatikāsūtra

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i tshul brgya lnga bcu pa'i mdo

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *mdo sde spyi'i rnam bzhag*. TBRC W1PD76588.438-439 (PDF of Pe cin: mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 2006).

P121, vol. 5.

English translation: Edward Conze. *The Short Prajñāpāramitā Texts*, 184-195. London: Luzac, 1973.

*One Hundred Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*

śatasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa stong phrag brgya pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bka' 'gyur (co ne)*. TBRC W1PD96685.9:603-621 (PDF of co ne rdzong: [co ne dgon], 1926).

P730, vols.12-18.

Condensed English translation: Edward Conze. *The Large Sūtra on Perfect Wisdom*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1975.*One Letter Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*

ekākṣarīmātānāmasarvatathāgataprajñāpāramitāsūtra

de bzhin gshegs pa thams cad kyi yum shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa yi ge gcig ma'i mdo

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *mdo sde spyi 'i rnam bzhas*. TBRC W1PD76588.440-440 (PDF of Pe cin: mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 2006).

P741, vol. 21; Dharma vol. 12.

*Perfection of Wisdom in Few Letters*

svalpākṣaraprajñāpāramitāsūtra

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa yi ge nyung ngu

In *bka' 'gyur (lha sa)*. TBRC W26071.34:513-518 (PDF of Lhasa: zhol bka' 'gyur par khang, [194-]).

P159, vol. 6.

English translation: Edward Conze. *The Short Prajñāpāramitā Texts*, 144-147. London: Luzac, 1973.*Twenty-five Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*

pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa stong phrag nyi shu lnga pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bka' 'gyur (sde dge par phud, 9)*. TBRC W22084.28:3-763 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae chodhey gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1976-1979).

Peking 731, vol. 19.

English translation (abridged): Edward Conze. *The Large Sūtra on the Perfection of Wisdom*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1975.*Verse Summary of the Perfection of Wisdom*

prajñāpāramitāsañcayagāthā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa sdud pa tshigs su bcad pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bka' 'gyur (sde dge par phud, 13)*. TBRC W22084.34:3-40 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae chodhey gyalwae sungrab partun khang).Peking 735, vol. 21; sde dge 13, vol. ka (*shes rab sna tshogs*)Sanskrit and Tibetan: Akira Yuyama. *Prajñā-pāramitā-ratna-guṇa-saṃcaya-gāthā (Sanskrit Recension A): Edited with an Introduction, Bibliographical Notes and a Tibetan Version from Tunhuang*. London: Cambridge University Press, 1976.Sanskrit: E. E. Obermiller. *Prajñāpāramitā-ratnagūṇa-sañcayagāthā*. Osnabrück, Germany: Biblio Verlag, 1970. Also: P. L. Vaidya. *Mahāyāna-sūtra-saṃgraha*. Part I. Buddhist Sanskrit Texts, 17. Darbhanga, India: Mithila Institute, 1961.English translation: Edward Conze. *The Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines & Its Verse Summary*. Bolinas, Calif.: Four Seasons Foundation, 1973.*White Lotus of Excellent Doctrine Sūtra*

dam pa'i chos pad ma dkar po zhes bya ba theg pa chen po'i mdo

saddharmapuṇḍarīka

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bka' 'gyur (sde dge par phud, 113)*. TBRC W22084 103 vols (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae chodhey gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1976-1979).



## 2. OTHER SANSKRIT AND TIBETAN WORKS

Abhayākara Gupta ('jigs med 'byung gnas sbas pa)

*Commentary on the "Eight Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra": Moonlight of Essential Points*

aṣṭasahasrikāprajñāpāramitāvṛttimarmakaumudī

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa brgyad stong pa'i 'grel pa gnad kyi zla 'od

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3805)*. TBRC W23703.90:4-457 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5202, vol. 92.

*Ornament to the Subduer's Thought*

mūnimatālamkāra

thub pa'i dgongs rgyan

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3903)*. TBRC W23703. 109: 148 – 587 457 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5294, vol.101.

Āryavimuktisena ('phags pa rnam grol sde, ca. 6<sup>th</sup> century C.E.)

*Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Treatise of Quintessential Instructions on the 'Superior Twenty-Five Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra': Ornament for the Clear Realizations"*

pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikāprajñāpāramitopadeśaśāstrābhisamayālamkāravṛtti

'phags pa shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa stong phrag nyi shu lnga pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi 'grel pa; abbr. nyi 'khri snang ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3787)*. TBRC W23703.80:29-425 (PDF of: Delhi, India: Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5185, vol. 88.

Sanskrit edition: *L'Abhisamayālamkāravṛtti di Ārya-Vimuktisena: primo Abhisamaya / testo e note critiche [a cura di] Corrado Pensa*. Roma, Italy: Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1967.

*[Sub]commentary on (Maitreya's) "Treatise of Quintessential Instructions on the 'Superior Twenty-Five Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra': Ornament for the Clear Realizations"*

āryapañcaviṃśatisāhasrikāprajñāpāramitopadeśaśāstrābhisamayālamkāra-kārikāvṛttika

nyi khrid nam 'grel / 'phags pa shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa stong phrag nyi shu lnga pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi tshig le'ur byas pa'i rnam par 'grel pa

In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3788)*. TBRC W23703.81:- 364 (PDF of Delhi, India: Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

P5186, vol. 88.

Aśaṅga (*thogs med*, fourth century)

*Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Sublime Continuum of the Great Vehicle" / Explanation of (Maitreya's) "Sublime Continuum of the Great Vehicle"*

mahāyānottaratantraśāstravyākhyā

theg pa chen po'i rgyud bla ma'i bstan bcos kyi rnam par bshad pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4025)*. TBRC W23703.123:150-259 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5526, vol. 108.

Sanskrit: E. H. Johnston (and T. Chowdhury). *The Ratnagotravibhāga Mahāyānottaratantraśāstra*. Patna, India: Bihar Research Society, 1950.

English translation: E. Obermiller. "Sublime Science of the Great Vehicle to Salvation." *Acta Orientalia* 9 (1931): 81-306. Also: J. Takasaki. *A Study on the Ratnagotravibhāga*. Rome: Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1966.

### Five Treatises on the Grounds

#### 1. *Grounds of Yogic Practice*

yogācārabhūmi

rnal 'byor spyod pa'i sa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4035)*. TBRC W23703.127:4-567 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5536-5538, vols. 109-110.

#### *Compendium of Synonyms*

paryāyasamgrahaṇī

rnam grangs bsdu ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4041)*. TBRC W23703.132:46-96 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

#### *Grounds of Bodhisattvas*

bodhisattvabhūmi

byang chub sems pa'i sa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4037)*. TBRC W23703.129:4-427. (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5538, vol. 110.

Sanskrit: Unrai Wogihara. *Bodhisattvabhūmi: A Statement of the Whole Course of the Bodhisattva (Being the Fifteenth Section of Yogācārabhūmi)*. Leipzig: 1908; Tokyo: Seigo Kenyūkai, 1930-1936. Also: Nalinaksha Dutt. *Bodhisattvabhūmi (Being the XVth Section of Asaṅgapaḍa's Yogacarabhūmi)*. Tibetan Sanskrit Works Series 7. Patna, India: K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 1966.

English translation of the Chapter on Suchness, the fourth chapter of Part I which is the fifteenth volume of the *Grounds of Yogic Practice*: Janice D. Willis. *On Knowing Reality: The Tattvārtha Chapter of Asaṅga's Bodhisattvabhūmi*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1979; reprint, Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1982.

#### *Grounds of Hearers*

nyan sa

śrāvakabhūmi

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4036)*. TBRC W23703.128:4-391 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5537, vol. 110.

Sanskrit: Karunesha Shukla. *Śrāvakabhūmi*. Tibetan Sanskrit Works Series 14. Patna, India: K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 1973.

#### 2. *Compendium of Ascertainments*

nirṇayasamgraha / viniścayasamgrahaṇī

rnam par gtan la dbab pa bsdu ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4038)*. TBRC W23703.130:4-579 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5539, vols. 110-111.

#### 3. *Compendium of Bases*

vastusamgraha

gzhi bsdu ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4039)*. TBRC W23703.131:255-671 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5540, vol. 111.

4. *Compendium of Enumerations*

paryāyasamgraha

rnam grang bsdu ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4041)*. TBRC W23703.132:46–96 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5542, vol. 111.

5. *Compendium of Explanations*

vivarāṇasamgraha

rnam par bshad pa bsdu ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4042)*. TBRC W23703.132:96-128 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5259, vol. 96-97; Peking 5543, vol. 111.

**Two Summaries**1. *Summary of Manifest Knowledge*

abhidharmasamuccaya

chos mngon pa kun btus

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4049)*. TBRC W23703.134:89-241 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5550, vol. 112.

Sanskrit: Pralhad Pradhan. *Abhidharma Samuccaya of Asaṅga*. Visva-Bharati Series 12. Santiniketan, India: Visva-Bharati (Santiniketan Press), 1950.

French translation: Walpola Rahula. *La Compendium de la super-doctrine (philosophie) (Abhidharmasamuccaya) d'Asaṅga*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1971.

2. *Summary of the Great Vehicle*

mahāyānasamgraha

theg pa chen po bsdu ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4048)*. TBRC W23703.134:4-87 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5549, vol. 112.

French translation and Chinese and Tibetan texts: Étienne Lamotte. *La Somme du grand véhicule d'Asaṅga*, 2 vols. Publications de l'Institut Orientaliste de Louvain 8. Louvain: Université de Louvain, 1938; reprint, 1973.

English translation: John P. Keenan. *The Summary of the Great Vehicle by Bodhisattva Asaṅga: Translated from the Chinese of Paramārtha*. Berkeley, Calif.: Numata Center for Buddhist Translation and Research, 1992.

Atisha (*dīpaṅkaraśrījñāna, mar me mdzad ye shes*, 982-1054)

*Lamp Summary of (Maitreya's) "Perfection of Wisdom"*

prajñāpāramitāpiṇḍārthapradīpa

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i don bsdu sgron ma

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3804)*. TBRC W23703.89:462-481 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5201, vol. 92.

*Lamp for the Path to Enlightenment*

bodhipathapradīpa

byang chub lam gyi sgron ma

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3947)*. TBRC W23703.111:477-483 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5343, vol. 103.

English translation with Atisha's autocommentary: Richard Sherbourne, S.J. *A Lamp for the Path and Commentary*. London: George Allen and Unwin, 1983.

English translation: *Atisha's Lamp for the Path: An Oral Teaching by Geshe Sonam Rinchen*. Trans. and ed. Ruth Sonam. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1997.

Bodhibhadra (*byang chub bzang po*)

*Connected Explanation of (Āryadeva's) "Compilation of the Essence of Wisdom"*

jñānasārasamuccayanāmanibandhana

ye shes snying po kun las btus pa shes bya ba'i bshad sbyar

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3852)*. TBRC W23703.97:57-92 (PDF of: Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Buddhashrījñāna

*Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Treatise of Quintessential Instructions on the Supramundane Victorious Mother Perfection of Wisdom: Ornament for the Clear Realizations": Wisdom Lamp Garland*

abhisamayālamkārabhagavatīprajñāpāramitopadeśaśāstravṛttiprajñāpradīpāvālī

bcom ldan 'das ma shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi 'grel pa shes rab sgron ma'i phreng ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3800)*. TBRC W23703.88:4-153 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5198, vol. 91.

*Commentary on the Difficult Points of the "Verse Summary"*

sañcayagāthāpañjikā

bsdus pa tshig su bcad pa'i dka' 'grel

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3798)*. TBRC W23703.87:233-380 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5196, vol. 91.

Chandrakīrti (*zla ba grags pa*, seventh century)

*Autocommentary on the "Supplement to (Nāgārjuna's) 'Treatise on the Middle'"*

madhyamakāvatārabhāṣya

dbu ma la 'jug pa'i bshad pa / dbu ma la 'jug pa'i rang 'grel

Peking 5263, vol. 98; Toh. 3862, vol. 'a. Also: Dharmasala, India: Council of Religious and Cultural Affairs, 1968.

Tibetan: Louis de La Vallée Poussin. *Madhyamakāvatāra par Chandrakīrti*. Bibliotheca Buddhica 9. Osnabrück, Germany: Biblio Verlag, 1970.

French translation (up to chap. 6, stanza 165): Louis de La Vallée Poussin. *Muséon* 8 (1907): 249-317; *Muséon* 11 (1910): 271-358; *Muséon* 12 (1911): 235-328.

German translation (chap. 6, stanzas 166-226): Helmut Tauscher. *Chandrakīrti-Madhyamakāvatārah und Madhyamakāvatārabhāṣyam*. Wiener Studien zur Tibetologie und Buddhismuskunde, 5. Vienna: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische und Buddhistische Studien Universität Wien, 1981.

*Supplement to (Nāgārjuna's) "Treatise on the Middle"*

madhyamakāvatāra

dbu ma la 'jug pa

Peking 5261, P5262, vol. 98; Toh. 3861, Toh. 3862, vol. 'a

Tibetan: Louis de La Vallée Poussin. *Madhyamakāvatāra par Chandrakīrti*. Bibliotheca Buddhica 9. Osnabrück, Germany: Biblio Verlag, 1970.

English translation: C. W. Huntington, Jr. *The Emptiness of Emptiness: An Introduction to Early Indian Mādhyamika*, 147-195. Honolulu, Hawaii: University of Hawaii Press, 1989.

English translation (chaps. 1-5): Jeffrey Hopkins. *Compassion in Tibetan Buddhism*. London: Rider, 1980; reprint, Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1980.

English translation (chap. 6): Stephen Batchelor. *Echoes of Voidness* by Geshé Rabten, 47-92. London: Wisdom Publications, 1983.

See also references under Chandrakīrti's *Autocommentary on the "Supplement."*

Chim Jam-pay-yang (*mchims 'jam pa 'i dbyangs or mchims nam mkha' grags*, died 1289 / 1290)

*Commentary on [Vasubandhu's] "Treasury of Manifest Knowledge": Ornament of Manifest Knowledge*

chos mngon mdzod kyi tshig le'ur byas pa'i 'grel pa mngon pa'i rgyan

Tibetan digital reprint edition: No TBRC entry found.

Buxaduor, India: Nang bstan shes rig 'dzin skyong slob gnyer khang, n.d.

Dharmakīrti (*chos kyi grags pa*, seventh century)

### Seven Treatises on Valid Cognition

#### 1. *Analysis of Relations*

sambandhaparīkṣā

'brel pa brtag pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4215)*. TBRC W23703.174:513-523

(PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5713, vol. 130

#### 2. *Ascertainment of Prime Cognition*

pramānaviniścaya

tshad ma rnam par nges pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4211)*. TBRC W23703.174:305-462

(PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5710, vol. 130

#### 3. *Commentary on (Dignāga's) "Compilation of Prime Cognition"*

pramānavārttikakārikā

tshad ma rnam 'grel gyi tshig le'ur byas pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4210)*. TBRC W23703.174:189-304

(PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5709, vol. 130.

Also: Sarnath, India: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Press, 1974.

Sanskrit: Dwarikadas Shastri. *Pramānavārttika of Āchārya Dharmakīrti*. Varanasi, India:

Bauddha Bharati, 1968. Also, Yūsho Miyasaka. "Pramānavārttika-Kārikā (Sanskrit and Ti-

betan)," *Acta Indologica* 2 (1971-1972): 1-206. Also, (chap. 1 and autocommentary) Raniero

Gnoli. *The Pramānavārttikam of Dharmakīrti: The First Chapter with the Autocommentary*.

Rome: Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1960.

English translation (chap. 2): Masatoshi Nagatomi. "A Study of Dharmakīrti's Pramānavārttika:

An English Translation and Annotation of the Pramānavārttika, Book I." Ph.D. diss., Harvard University, 1957.

English translation (chap. 4, stanzas 1-148): Tom J.F. Tillemans. *Dharmakīrti's Pramānavārt-*

*tika: An Annotated Translation of the Fourth Chapter (parārthānumāna)*, vol. 1. Vienna:

Verlag der Osterreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 2000.

#### 4. *Drop of Reasoning*

nyāyabinduprakaraṇa

rigs pa'i thigs pa zhes bya ba'i rab tu byed pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4212)*. TBRC W23703.174:463-477 In

bstan 'gyur (sde dge). TBRC W23703. 174: 463 – 477 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5711, vol. 130.

English translation: Th. Stcherbatsky. *Buddhist Logic*. New York: Dover Publications, 1962.

#### 5. *Drop of Reasons*

hetubindunāmaprakaraṇa

gtan tshigs kyi thigs pa zhes bya ba rab tu byed pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4213)*. TBRC W23703.174:477-511

(PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5712, vol. 130.

6. *Principles of Debate*

vādanyāya

rtsod pa'i rigs pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4218)*. TBRC W23703.175:654-712 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5715, vol. 130.

7. *Proof of Other Continuums*

saṃtānāntarasiddhināmaprakaraṇa

rgyud gzhan grub pa zhes bya ba'i rab tu byed pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4219)*. TBRC W23703.175:712719 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5716, vol. 130.

Dharmakīrtishrī (*chos kyi grags pa dpal / gser gling pa*)

*Explanation of (Haribhadra's) "Commentary on (Maitreya's) 'Treatise of Quintessential Instructions on the Perfection of Wisdom: Ornament for the Clear Realizations'": Illumination of the Difficult to Realize*

prajñāpāramitopadeśaśāstrābhisamayālamkāravṛttidurbodhālokānāmaṭīkā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi 'grel pa rtogs par dka' ba'i snang ba zhes bya ba'i 'grel bshad

In *bstan 'gyur/ (dpe bsdur ma)*. TBRC W1PD95844.52:395-684 (Pe cin/: krung go'i bod rig pa'i dpe skrun khang /, 1994-2008).

Peking 5192, vol. 91.

Dharmamitra (*chos kyi bshes gnyen*)

*Explanation of (Haribhadra's) Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Ornament for the Clear Realizations": Very Clear Words*

abhisamayālamkārikārikāprajñāpāramitopadeśaśāstrāṭīkāprasphuṭapadā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi tshig le'ur byas pa'i 'grel bshad tshig rab tu gsal ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3796)*. TBRC W23703.87:4-221 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5194, vol. 91.

Dharmashrī

*Explanation of the "Eight Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra"*

śatasāhasrikāvivarāṇa

stong phrag brgya pa'i rnam par bshad pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3802)*. TBRC W23703.88:409-541 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5203, vol. 92.

*Key to the Treasury of the Perfection of Wisdom*

prajñāpāramitopadeśaśāstrābhisamayālamkāravṛttidurbodhālokānāmaṭīkā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i mdzod kyi lde mig

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3806)*. TBRC W23703.90:457-471 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5204, vol. 92.

Döl-po-pa Shay-rab-gyal-tshan (*dol po pa shes rab rgyal mshan; 1292-1361*)

*The Great Calculation of the Doctrine, Which Has the Significance of a Fourth Council*

bka' bsdur bzhi pa'i don bstan rtsis chen po

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *mkyen brtse'i 'od snang*. TBRC W1PD105890. 1 vol. (PDF of Lhasa: bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang, 2010).

- Matthew Kapstein. *The 'Dzam-thang Edition of the Collected Works of Kun-mkhyen Dol-po-pa Shes-rab-rgyal-mtshan: Introduction and Catalogue*, vol. 5, 207-252. Delhi: Shedrup Books, 1992.
- English translation: Cyrus R. Stearns. *The Buddha from Dol po: A Study of the Life and Thought of the Tibetan Master Dolpopa Sherab Gyaltsen*, 127-173. Albany, N.Y.: State University of New York Press, 1999.
- Mountain Doctrine, Ocean of Definitive Meaning: Final Unique Quintessential Instructions*  
ri chos nges don rgya mtsho zhes bya ba mthar thug thun mong ma yin pa'i man ngag  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (shes rab rgyal mtshan)*. TBRC W21208.3:173-190 (PDF of 'dzam thang: [s.n.], 199-?).
- Gangtok, India: Dodrup Sangyey Lama, 1976.
- Also: 'dzam thang bsam 'grub nor bu'i gling, n.d.
- Also: Matthew Kapstein. *The 'Dzam-thang Edition of the Collected Works of Kun-mkhyen Dol-po-pa Shes-rab-rgyal-mtshan: Introduction and Catalogue*, 25-707. Delhi: Shedrup Books, 1992.
- Also: Beijing: mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 1998.
- English translation: Jeffrey Hopkins. *Mountain Doctrine: Tibet's Fundamental Treatise on Other-Emptiness and the Buddha Matrix*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2006.
- Gen-dün-drub, First Dalai Lama (*dge 'dun grub*, 1391-1474)  
*Commentary on (Guṇaprabha's) "Aphorisms on Discipline" / Essence of the Entire Discipline, Eloquent Holy Doctrine*  
legs par gsungs pa'i dam chos 'dul ba mtha' dag gi snying po  
In *gsung 'bum (dge 'dun grub pa)*. TBRC W759.1:11-536 (PDF of Gangtok: dodrup lama sangye, 1978-1981).
- Collected Works of the First Dalai Lama *dge-'dun-grub-pa*. Gangtok, Sikkim: Dodrup Lama Sangye, 1978-1981.
- Explanation of [Vasubandhu's] "Treasury of Manifest Knowledge": Illuminating the Path to Liberation*  
dam pa'i chos mngon pa'i mdzod kyi rnam par bshad pa thar lam gsal byed  
Tibetan editions:  
In *gsung 'bum (dge 'dun grub pa)*. TBRC W759.3:9-462 (PDF of Gangtok: dodrup lama sangye, 1978-1981).
- Collected Works of the First Dalai Lama *dge-'dun-grub-pa*, vol. 3. Gangtok, Sikkim: Dodrup Lama, 1978-1981.
- Buxaduo, India: n.p., 1967. Also: Sarnath, India: wa na mtho' slob dge ldan spyi las khang, 1973.
- English translation (chapters 1-5): David Patt. *Elucidating the Path to Liberation*. Ann Arbor, Mich.: University Microfilms, 1994.
- English translation (chap. 6): Harvey B. Aronson, "The Buddhist Path: A Translation of the Sixth Chapter of the First Dalai Lama's *Path of Liberation*." *Tibet Journal* 5, no. 3 (1980): 29-51; 5, no. 4 (1980): 28-47; 12, no. 2 (1987): 25-40; 12, no. 3 (1987): 41-61.
- Gen-dün-gya-tso, Second Dalai Lama (*dge 'dun rgya mtsho*, 1476-1542)  
*Lamp Illuminating the Meaning / Commentary on the Difficult Points of "Differentiating the Interpretable and the Definitive" from the Collected Works of the Foremost Holy Omniscient [Tsongkha-pa]: Lamp Thoroughly Illuminating the Meaning of His Thought*  
rje btsun thams cad mkhyen pa'i gsung 'bum las drang nges rnam 'byed kyi dka' 'grel dgongs pa'i don rab tu gsal bar byed pa'i sgron me  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (dge 'dun rgya mtsho)*. TBRC W861.2:607-817 (dkar mdzes par ma: [s.n.], 199-).
- n.d. [blockprint borrowed from the library of H.H. the Dalai Lama and photocopied] volume 'a  
Guṇaprabha (*yon tan 'od*)

- Aphorisms on Discipline*  
vinayasūtra  
'dul ba'i mdo  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (*sde dge*, 4117). TBRC W23703.159:3-201 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5619, vol. 123
- Gung-ru Chö-jung / Gung-ru Chö-kyi-jung-nay (*gung ru chos 'byung / gung ru chos kyi 'byung gnas*; fl. mid 16<sup>th</sup> to early 17<sup>th</sup> centuries)  
*Garland of White Lotus / Decisive Analysis of (Tsong-kha-pa's) "Differentiating the Interpretable and the Definitive, The Essence of Eloquence": Garland of White Lotus*  
drang ba dang nges pa'i rnam par 'byed pa legs bshad snying po zhes bya ba'i mtha' dpyod padma dkar po'i phreng ba  
No TBRC data found.  
sku bum, Tibet: sku bum Monastery, n.d. [blockprint obtained by Hopkins in 1988].
- Gung-tang Kön-chok-tan-pay-drön-me (*gung thang dkon mchog bstan pa'i sgron me*, 1762-1823)  
*Presentation of the Four Truths, Port of Those Wishing Liberation: Festival for the Wise*  
bden bzhi'i rnam gzhas thar 'dod 'jug ngogs mkhas pa'i dga' ston  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum* (*dkon mchog bstan pa'i sgron me / bla brang par ma*). TBRC W22185.2:687-726 (PDF of bla brang bkra shis 'khyil: bla brang dgon pa, [199-]).  
Collected Works of Gun-thaän dkon-mchog bstan-pa'i sgron-me, vol. 2. New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1972.
- Gung-tang Lo-drö-gya-tsho (*gung thang blo gros rgya mtsho*, 1851-1928/1930)  
*Annotations to (Haribhadra's) Small Clear Meaning Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Ornament for the Clear Realizations": Clearing Away the Darkness for Those Wanting Liberation*  
mngon rtogs rgyan gyi 'grel chung don gsal ba'i mchan 'grel kun bzang zhing gi nyi ma thar 'dod mun sel  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *phar phyin* (*skabs gsum pa phyogs bsgrigs*) TBRC W30083. 24 – 61 (PDF of lan kru'u: kan su'u mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 2001).  
TBRC W00EGS1017126 (PDF of Lhasa?: dge ldan legs bshad gsung rab 'grem spel khang, 2006).
- Commentary on the Difficult Points of (Tsong-kha-pa's) "Treatise Differentiating Interpretable and the Definitive Meanings, The Essence of Eloquence": A Precious Lamp*  
drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i bstan bcos legs bshad snying po'i dka' 'grel rin chen sgron me  
TBRC W2CZ6655 (PDF of bla brang bkra shis 'khyil par khang, republished by: N. Kanara, Karnataka State, India: Kesang Thabkhes, 1982).
- Gyal-tshab-dar-ma-rin-chen (*rgyal tshab dar ma rin chen*, 1364-1432)  
*Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Sublime Continuum of the Great Vehicle" / Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Treatise on the Later Scriptures of the Great Vehicle"*  
theg pa chen po rgyud bla ma'i 'ikka  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum* (*rgyal tshab rje*). TBRC W22110.3:5-464 (PDF of bkra lhun par nying bskyar par ma, New Delhi, India: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1980-1981).  
Collected Works of Rgyal-tshab Dar-ma-rin-chen, vol. 2 (entire). Delhi: Guru Deva, 1982. Also: Collected Works of Rgyal-tshab Dar-ma-rin-chen, vol. 2 (entire). Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1981. Also: blockprint in the library of H.H. the Dalai Lama, no other data.
- Explanation of (Āryadeva's) "Four Hundred": Essence of Eloquence*  
bzhi brgya pa'i rnam bshad legs bshad snying po  
TBRC W1KG4465. 1 vol (PDF of Sarnath, India: dge lugs dge ldan dge slob khang, 1971).  
Sarnath, India: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Printing Press, 1971; also, n.d., blockprint in library of HH the Dalai Lama



English translation: *Yogic Deeds of Bodhisattvas: Gyel-tshap on Āryadeva's Four Hundred*. Commentary by Geshe Sonam Rinchen, translated and edited by Ruth Sonam. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1994.

*Explanation of (Shāntideva's) "Engaging in the Bodhisattva Deeds": Entrance for Conqueror Children*

byang chub sems dpa'i spyod pa la 'jug pa'i nram bshad rgyal sras 'jug ngog

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (gyal tshab rje)*. TBRC W29194.4:5-330. PDF of Dharamsala: Sherig Parkhang, 1997).

Sarnath: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Printing Press, 1973

*Illumination of the Essential Meanings of (Nāgārjuna's) "Precious Garland of the Middle Way"*

dbu ma rin chen 'phreng ba'i snying po'i don gsal bar byed pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (rgyal tshab rje)*. TBRC W22110.1:353-508 (PDF of New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1980-1981).

Collected Works, *ka*. Lhasa: zhol par khang, 15th rab 'byung in the fire rooster year, that is, 1897 (78 folios); also, Collected Works, *ka*. New Delhi: Guru Deva, 1982 (349-503, 78 folios), "reproduced from a set of prints from the 1897 lha-sa old zhol (*dga' ldan phun tshogs gling*) blocks." [These are two separate editions.]

*Illumination of the Path to Liberation / Explanation of (Dharmakīrti's) Commentary on (Dignāga's) "Compilation of Prime Cognition": Unerring Illumination of the Path to Liberation*

thar lam gsal byed / tshad ma nram 'grel gyi tshig le'ur byas pa'i nram bshad thar lam phyin ci ma log par gsal bar byed pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *tshad ma nram 'grel gyi nram bshad*. TBRC W665:11-548 (PDF of zhang kang: zhang kang then ma dpe skrun kung zi, 2000).

Collected Works of Rgyal-tshab Dar-ma-rin-chen, vol. 6 (entire). Delhi: Guru Deva, 1982. Also: Collected Works of Rgyal-tshab Dar-ma-rin-chen, vol. 6 (entire). Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1981. Also: Varanasi, India: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Press, 1974.

*Notes [on Tsong-kha-pa's Teachings] on the Eight Difficult Topics*

dka' gnas brgyad kyi zin bris rje'i gsung bzhin brjed byang du bkod pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (tsong kha pa)*. TBRC W22273.15:623-658 (PDF of bla brang: bla brang bkra shis 'khyil, [199?]).

Haribhadra (*seng ge bzang po*, late eighth century)

*Clear Meaning Commentary / Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Treatise of Quintessential Instructions on the Perfection of Wisdom: Ornament for the Clear Realizations"*

sputhārtha / abhisamayālaṃkāranāmaprajñāpāramitopadeśaśāstravṛtti

'grel pa don gsal / shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan ces bya ba'i 'grel pa

Sanskrit editions:

Amano, Kōei. *A study on the Abhisamaya-alaṃkāra-kārikā-śāstra-vṛtti*. Rev. ed. Yanai City, Japan: Rokoku Bunko, 2008.

Tripathi, Ram Shankar. *Slob-dpon Sen-ge-bzan-pos mdzad pa'i Mñon-par-rtogs-pa'i-rgyan gyi 'grel pa Don-gsal (Prajñāpāramitopadeśaśāstre Ācāryaharibhadraviracitā Abhisamayālaṅkāravṛtīḥ Sphuṭārtha)*, 1977. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Sarnath, India: Central Institute of Higher Tibetan Studies. 1993.

Wogihara, Unrai. *Abhisamayālaṃkāralokā Prajñā-pāramitā-vyākhyā*, *The Work of Haribhadra*. 7 vols. Tokyo: Toyo Bunko, 1932-1935; reprint, Tokyo: Sankibo Buddhist Book Store, 1973.

Wogihara, Unrai, ed. *Abhisamayālaṃkāralokā Prajñāpāramitāvyākhyā: Commentary on aṣṭasahasrikā-prajñāpāramitā by Haribhadra, Together with the Text Commented on*. Tokyo, Japan: The Toyo Bunko, 1973.

Tibetan edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge)*. TBRC W23703 86: 158-281 (PDF of: Delhi, India: Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

English translation: Sparham, Gareth. *Āryavimuktisena, Maitreyañātha, and Haribhadra. Abhisamayālamkāra with Vṛtti and Ālokā*. 4 vols. Fremont, CA: Jain Publishing Company, 2006-2011.

*Commentary on the Difficult Points of the “Verse Summary of the Precious Qualities of the Supramundane Victorious [Mother]”*

bhagavatīratnaguṇasamcayagāthāpāñjikāsudbodhinīnāma

bcom ldan 'das yon tan rin po che sdus pa'i tshig su bcaḍ pa'i dka' 'grel

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3790)*. TBRC W23703.86:4-157 (PDF of: Delhi, India: Karmapa choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5190.

*[Commentary on the] “Twenty-Five Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra”*

pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā-prajñāpāramitā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa stong phrag nyi shu lnga pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3790)*. TBRC W23703.82:4-631 (PDF of: Delhi, India: Karmapa choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5188.

*Explanation of the “Eight Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra”: Illumination of (Maitreya's) “Ornament for the Clear Realizations”*

aṣṭasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitāvākhyānābhisamayālamkāralokā

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa brgyad stong pa'i bshad pa mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi snang ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge)*. TBRC W23703.85: 4-683 (PDF of: Delhi, India: Karmapa choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Jam-yang-shay-pa Ngag-wang-tson-drū ('jam dbyangs bzhad pa'i rdo rje ngag dbang brtson grus, 1648-1721/1722)

*Eloquent Presentation of the Eight Categories and Seventy Topics: Sacred Word of Guru Ajita*

dnogs po brgyad don bdun cu'i nram bzhag legs par bshad pa mi pham bla ma'i zhal lung

Tibetan editions:

1973 Ngawang Gelek bla brang: *Collected Works of 'Jam-dbyangs-bzhad-pa'i-rdo-rje*, vol. 15. New Delhi, India: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1973.

1987 Go-mang Lhasa (first printing): *don bdun cu'i mtha' spyod mi pham bla ma'i zhal lung gsal ba'i legs bshad blo gsal mgul rgyan*. 1a-20a. Go-mang College: Lha-sa, Tibet: n.d. (PDF of complete printing available at UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, <http://www.uma-tibet.org>.)

1987 Go-mang Lhasa (second printing): *don bdun cu'i mtha' spyod mi pham bla ma'i zhal lung gsal ba'i legs bshad blo gsal mgul rgyan*. 3a-20a. Go-mang College: Lha-sa, Tibet: n.d. (PDF of incomplete printing available at UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, <http://www.uma-tibet.org>.)

1995 Mundgod revision of Ngawang Gelek bla brang: *Collected Works of 'Jam-dbyangs-bzhad-pa'i-rdo-rje*, vol. 16. New Delhi, India: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1995.

1999 Mundgod: dnogs po brgyad don bdun cu'i nram gzhag legs par bshad pa mi pham bla ma'i zhal lung. In *don bdun cu dang sa lam sogs nyer mkho'i skor phyogs bsgrigs*: 1-55. Mundgod, India: Drepung Gomang Library, 1999.

1999 Tōyō Bunko CD-ROM: “Tibetan texts of *don bdun bcu* of 'jam dbyangs bzhad pa and *rigs lam 'phrul gyi lde mig of dkon mchog bstan pa'i sgron me*.” In the Toyo Bunko Database CD Release II. Tokyo, Japan: Tōyō Bunko, 1999. CD-ROM. (This edition is based on the 1999 Mundgod.)

2001 Kan su'u: *dnogs po brgyad don bdun cu'i nram gzhag legs par bshad pa mi pham bla ma'i zhal lung*. In *don bdun cu dang sa lam sogs nyer mkho'i skor phyogs bsgrigs*: 88-146. Kan su'u, China: mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 2005.

- 2005 Mundgod: *dngos po brgyad don bdun cu'i rnam gzhag legs par bshad pa mi pham bla ma'i zhal lung*. In *don bdun cu dang sa lam sogs nyer mkho'i skor phyogs bsgrigs*: 1-67. Mundgod, India: Drepung Gomang Library, 2005.
- 2011 TBRC *bla brang*: In *kun mkhyen 'jam dbyangs bzhad pa'i rdo rje mchog gi gsung 'bum*, vol. 14. TBRC W22186.14: 115-178, which is a PDF of: *bla brang bkra shis 'khyil*: bla brang brka shis 'khyil dgon, publishing date unknown.
- Great Exposition of the Interpretable and the Definitive / Decisive Analysis of (Tsong-kha-pa's) "Differentiating the Interpretable and the Definitive": Storehouse of White Lapis-Lazuli of Scripture and Reasoning Free from Mistake, Fulfilling the Hopes of the Fortunate*  
drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i mtha' dpyod 'khrul bral lung rigs bai dūr dkar pa'i ngan mdzod skal bzang re ba kun skong  
Edition cited: TBRC W22186.10: 1-288, which is a PDF of: *bla brang bkra shis 'khyil*, bla brang brka shis 'khyil dgon, publishing date unknown.
- Great Exposition of Tenets / Explanation of "Tenets": Sun of the Land of Samantabhadra Brilliantly Illuminating All of Our Own and Others' Tenets and the Meaning of the Profound [Emptiness], Ocean of Scripture and Reasoning Fulfilling All Hopes of All Beings*  
grub mtha' chen mo / grub mtha'i rnam bshad rang gzhan grub mtha' kun dang zab don mchog tu gsal ba kun bzang zhing gi nyi ma lung rigs rgya mtsho skye dgu'i re ba kun skong  
Edition cited: Musoorie, India: Dalama, 1962. Also: *Collected Works of 'Jam-dbyaṅs-bzad-pa'i-rdo-rje*, vol. 14 (entire). New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1973. Also: Mundgod, India: Drepung Gomang Library, 1999.  
English translation (entire root text and edited portions of the autocommentary and Nga-wang-pel-den's Annotations): Jeffrey Hopkins. *Maps of the Profound: Jam-yang-shay-ba's Great Exposition of Buddhist and Non-Buddhist Views on the Nature of Reality*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2003.  
English translation (beginning of the chapter on the Consequence School): Jeffrey Hopkins. *Meditation on Emptiness*, 581-697. London: Wisdom Publications, 1983; rev. ed., Boston: Wisdom Publications, 1996.  
English translation of root text with Losang Gonchok's commentary: Daniel Cozort and Craig Preston. *Buddhist Philosophy: Losang Gonchok's Short Commentary to Jamyang Shayba's Root Text on Tenets*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2003.  
Translation of the section of the distinctive tenets of the Consequence School: Daniel Cozort, *Unique Tenets of the Middle Way Consequence School* (Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion, 1998).
- Jay-tsun Chö-kyi-gyal-tshan (*se ra rje btsun chos kyi rgyal mtshan*, 1469-1546)  
*Excellent Means Definitely Revealing the Eight Categories and Seventy Topics, the Topics of (Maitreya's) "Treatise of Quintessential Instructions on the Perfection of Wisdom: Ornament for the Clear Realizations," the Stainless Oral Transmission of Jay-tsun-chö-kyi-gyal-tshan*  
bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi brjod bya dngos brgyad don bdun cu nges par 'byed pa'i thabs dam pa rje btsun chos kyi rgyal mtshan gyi gsung rgyun dri ma med pa  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: Indian block-print, n.d.  
*dngos po brgyad don bdun cu'i rnam gzhag*  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *don bdun cu dang sa lam sogs nyer mkho'i skor phyogs bsgrigs*. TBRC W30307.11-54. (PDF of Llan kru'u: kan su'u mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 2001).  
kan su'u, China: mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 2005.
- Rje btsun pa'i Don bdun cu: An Introduction to the Abhisamayālaṅkāra*  
Edited with Introduction by Shunzō Onoda  
Kyoto, Japan: The Association of Indian and Buddhist Studies, Nagoya University, 1983.
- Khay-drub-ge-leg-pal-sang (*m khas grub dge legs dpal bzang*, 1385-1438)  
*Compilation on Emptiness / Opening the Eyes of the Fortunate: Treatise Brilliantly Clarifying the Profound Emptiness*

stong thun chen mo / zab mo stong pa nyid rab tu gsal bar byed pa'i bstan bcos skal bzang mig 'byed

TBRC W1KG15939. 1 vol (PDF of Lha sa: ser gtsug nang bstan dpe rmying 'tshol bsdu phyogs sgrig khang , 2009).

Collected Works of the Lord Mkhas-grub rje dge-legs-dpal-bzañ-po, vol. 1, 179-702 (edition cited). New Delhi: Guru Deva, 1980. Also: Collected Works of Mkhas-grub dge-legs dpal, vol. 1, 125-482. New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1983. Also: New Delhi: n.p., 1972.

English translation: José Ignacio Cabezón. *A Dose of Emptiness: An Annotated Translation of the stong thun chen mo of mKhas grub dGe legs dpal bzang*, 21-388. Albany, N.Y.: State University of New York Press, 1992.

English translation of the chapter on the Mind-Only School: Jeffrey Hopkins. *Khay-drub-ge-leg-pal-sang's "Opening the Eyes of the Fortunate": The Mind-Only School*. Unpublished manuscript.

*Extensive Explanation of (Dharmakīrti's) "Commentary on (Dignāga's) 'Compilation of Prime Cognition'"*: *Ocean of Reasoning*

tshad ma rnam 'grel gyi rgya cher bshad pa rigs pa'i rgya mtsho

TBRC W1KG10279, vol. 10 (*tha*), 623-1006 (PDF of bla brang bkra shis 'khyil par khang edition, 199?).

Kön-chog-jig-may-wang-po (*dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po*, 1728-1791)

*Condensed Presentation of the Eight Categories and Seventy Topics*

dnogs brgyad don bdun cu'i nram bzhag bsdu pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po)* TBRC W1KG9560.6:618-635 (PDF of New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1971).

Collected Works of dKon-mchog-'jigs-med-dbang-po, vol. 6. New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1972.

*Precious Garland of Tenets / Presentation of Tenets: A Precious Garland*

grub pa'i mtha'i mam par bzhag pa rin po che'i phreng ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po)*. TBRC W1KG9560.6:496-546. new delhi: ngawang gelek demo, 1971. (PDF of New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1971).

Tibetan: K. Mimaki. Le Grub mtha' nram bzhag rin chen phreñ ba de dkon mchog 'jigs med dbañ po (1728-1791), *Zinbun* [The Research Institute for Humanistic Studies, Kyoto University], 14 (1977):55-112. Also, Collected Works of dkon-mchog-'jigs-med-dbañ-po, vol. 6, 485-535. New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1972. Also: Xylograph in thirty-two folios from the Lessing collection of the rare book section of the University of Wisconsin Library, which is item 47 in Leonard Zwilling. *Tibetan Blockprints in the Department of Rare Books and Special Collections*. Madison, Wis.: University of Wisconsin-Madison Libraries, 1984. Also: Mundgod, India: blo gsal gling Press, 1980. Also: Dharmasala, India: Tibetan Cultural Printing Press, 1967. Also: Dharmasala, India: Teaching Training, n.d. Also: A blockprint edition in twenty-eight folios obtained in 1987 from Go-mang College in Lha-sa, printed on blocks that predate the Cultural Revolution.

English translation: Geshe Lhündup Sopa and Jeffrey Hopkins. *Practice and Theory of Tibetan Buddhism*, 48-145. New York: Grove, 1976; rev. ed., *Cutting through Appearances: Practice and Theory of Tibetan Buddhism*, 109-322. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1989. Also: H. V. Guenther. *Buddhist Philosophy in Theory and Practice*. Baltimore, Md.: Penguin, 1972. Also, the chapters on the Autonomy School and the Consequence School: Shōtarō Iida. *Reason and Emptiness*, 27-51. Tokyo: Hokuseido, 1980.

*Presentation of the Grounds and Paths: Beautiful Ornament of the Three Vehicles*

sa lam gyi mam bzhag theg gsum mdzes rgyan

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po)*. TBRC W1KG9560.7:432-475 (PDF of New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1971).

Collected Works of dkon-mchog-'jigs-med-dbañ-po, vol. 7. New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1972.

English translation: Elizabeth Napper. *Traversing the Spiritual Path: Kön-chog-jig-may-wang-po's Presentation of the Grounds and Paths: Beautiful Ornament of the Three Vehicles, with Dan-ma-lo-chö's Oral Commentary*. Dyke, VA: UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, 2013: downloadable at [uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org).

*Thorough Expression of the Natures of the One Hundred Seventy-Three Aspects of the Three Exalted Knowers: White Lotus Vine of Eloquence*

mkyhen gsum gyi rnam pa brgya dang don gsum gyi rang bzhin yang dag par brjod pa legs bshad padma dkar po'i khri shing

Tibetan editions:

In *gsung 'bum (dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po)*. TBRC W1KG9560.6:636-655 (PDF of New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1971).

Collected Works of dKon-mchog-'jigs-med-dbang-po, vol. 6. New Delhi, India: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1971.

In *gsung 'bum (dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po)*. TBRC W2122.6: 627-646 (PDF of bla brang bkra shis 'khyil, Tibet: bla brang dgon pa, 1999).

English translation: Jeffrey Hopkins and Jongbok Yi. *The Hidden Teaching of the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras: Jam-yang-shay-pa's Seventy Topics and Kön-chog-jig-may-wang-po's 173 Topics*. Dyke, VA: UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, 2014: downloadable at [uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org).

Kumārashrībhadrā

*Summary of (Maitreya's) "Perfection of Wisdom"*

prajñāpāramitāpīṇḍārtha

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i don bsdud pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3797)*. TBRC W23703.87:221-233 (PDF of New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1971).

Peking 5195, vol. 91.

Long-döl Ngag-wang-lo-sang (*klong rdol ngag dbang blo bzang, 1719-1794*)

*Vocabulary Occurring in the Perfection of Wisdom*

phar phyin las byung ba'i ming gi rnam grangs

Tibetan editions:

TBRC W87: 343-412 (PDF of khreng tu'u, China: [s.n.], [199-]).

Collected Works, Śata-Piṭaka Series, vol. 100. New Delhi, India: International Academy of Indian Culture, 1973.

Lo-sang-chö-kyi-gyal-tshan (*blo bzang chos kyi rgyal mtshan, 1570-1662*)

*Explanation of the First Category in the Ocean of Good Explanation Illuminating the Essence of the Essence of (Maitreya's) "Treatise of Quintessential Instructions on the Perfection of Wisdom: Ornament for the Clear Realizations"*

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi snying po'i snying po gsal bar legs par bshad pa'i rgya mtsho las skabs dang po'i rnam par bshad pa

Tibetan editions:

Collected Works, vol. 4. New Delhi, India: Mongolian Lama Gurudeva, 1973.

TBRC W23430.4: 265-346, which is a PDF of: New Delhi, India: Mongolian Lama Gurudeva, 1973.

Maitreya (*byams pa*)

### Five Doctrines of Maitreya

1. *Great Vehicle Treatise on the Sublime Continuum / Treatise on the Later Scriptures of the Great Vehicle*

mahāyānottaratāntrasāstra

theg pa chen po rgyud bla ma'i bstan bcos

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (*sde dge*, 4024). TBRC W23703.123: 109-148 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking eking 5525, vol. 108; *sde dge* 4024, Dharma vol. 77

Sanskrit: E. H. Johnston (and T. Chowdhury). *The Ratnagotravibhāga Mahāyānottaratantraśāstra*. Patna, India: Bihar Research Society, 1950.

English translation: E. Obermiller. "Sublime Science of the Great Vehicle to Salvation." *Acta Orientalia* 9 (1931): 81-306. Also: J. Takasaki. *A Study on the Ratnagotravibhāga*. Rome: Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1966.

## 2. Differentiation of Phenomena and Noumenon

dharmadharmatāvibhaṅga

chos dang chos nyid rnam par 'byed pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (*sde dge*, 4022). TBRC W23703.123:93-100 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5523, vol. 108.

Edited Tibetan: Jōshō Nozawa. "The *Dharmadharmatāvibhaṅga* and the *Dharmadharmatāvibhaṅgavṛtti*, Tibetan Texts, Edited and Collated, Based upon the Peking and Derge Editions." In *Studies in Indology and Buddhism: Presented in Honour of Professor Susumu Yamaguchi on the Occasion of his Sixtieth Birthday*, edited by Gadjin M. Nagao and Jōshō Nozawa. Kyoto: Hozokan, 1955.

English translation: John Younghan Cha. *A Study of the Dharmadharmatāvibhāga: An Analysis of the Religious Philosophy of the Yogācāra, Together with an Annotated Translation of Vasubandhu's Commentary*. PhD diss., Northwestern University, 1996.

English translation: Jim Scott. *Maitreya's Distinguishing Phenomena and Pure Being with Commentary by Mipham*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2004.

## 3. Differentiation of the Middle and the Extremes

madhyāntavibhaṅga

dbus dang mtha' rnam par 'byed pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (*sde dge*, 4021). TBRC W23703.123:81-92 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5522, vol. 108; Dharma vol. 77.

Sanskrit: Gadjin M. Nagao. *Madhyāntavibhāga-bhāṣya*. Tokyo: Suzuki Research Foundation, 1964. Also: Ramchandra Pandeya. *Madhyānta-vibhāga-śāstra*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1971.

English translation: Stefan Anacker. *Seven Works of Vasubandhu*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1984.

Also, of chapter 1: Thomas A. Kochumuttom. *A Buddhist Doctrine of Experience*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1982. Also, of chapter 1: F. Th. Stecherbatsky. *Madhyāntavibhāga, Discourse on Discrimination between Middle and Extremes ascribed to Bodhisattva Maitreya and Commented by Vasubandhu and Sthiramati*. Bibliotheca Buddhica 30 (1936). Osnabrück, Germany: Biblio Verlag, 1970; reprint, Calcutta: Indian Studies Past and Present, 1971. Also, of chapter 1: David Lasar Friedmann. *Sthiramati, Madhyāntavibhāgaṭikā: Analysis of the Middle Path and the Extremes*. Utrecht, Netherlands: Rijksuniversiteit te Leiden, 1937. Also, of chapter 3: Paul Wilfred O'Brien, S.J. "A Chapter on Reality from the *Madhyāntavibhāgaśāstra*." *Monumenta Nipponica* 9, nos. 1-2 (1953): 277-303 and *Monumenta Nipponica* 10, nos. 1-2 (1954): 227-269.

## 4. Ornament for the Clear Realizations

abhisamayālamkāra/ abhisamayālamkāra-nāma-prajñāpāramitopadeśaśāstrakārikā

mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan/ shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan shes bya ba'i tshig le'ur byas pa

Sanskrit editions:

Amano, Kōei. *A study on the Abhisamaya-alamkāra-kārikā-śāstra-vṛtti*. Rev. ed. Yanai City, Japan: Rokoku Bunko, 2008.

Stcherbatsky, Theodore and Eugène Obermiller, eds. *Abhisamayālaṅkāra-Prajñāpāramitā-Upadeśa-śāstra: The Work of Bodhisattva Maitreya*. Bibliotheca Indo-Buddhica Series. Reprint ed. Delhi, India: Sri Satguru Publications, 1992.

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3786)*. TBRC W23703.80:3-28 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae Choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

English translations:

Brunnhölzl, Karl. *Gone Beyond: The Prajñāpāramitā Sūtras, The Ornament of Clear Realization, and its Commentaries in the Tibetan Kagyü tradition*. The Tsadra Foundation series. 2 vols. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion Publications, 2011-2012.

———. *Groundless Paths: The Prajñāpāramitā Sūtras, The Ornament of Clear Realization, and Its Commentaries in the Tibetan Nyingma Tradition*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion Publications, 2012.

Conze, Edward. *Abhisamayālaṅkāra: Introduction and Translation from Original Text with Sanskrit-Tibetan Index*. Roma, Italy: Is. M.E.O., 1954.

Hopkins, Jeffrey and Jongbok Yi. *Maitreya's Ornament for the Clear Realizations*. Dyke, VA: UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, 2015: downloadable at [uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org).

———. *Ngag-wang-pal-dan's Explanation of the Treatise "Ornament for the Clear Realizations" From the Approach of the Meaning of the Words: The Sacred Word of Maitreya-nātha*. Dyke, VA: UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, 2014: downloadable at [uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org).

———. (containing 203 of the 274 stanzas) *The Hidden Teaching of the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras: Jam-yang-shay-pa's Seventy Topics and Kōn-chog-jig-may-wang-po's 173 Topics*. Dyke, VA: UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, 2014: downloadable at [uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org).

Sparham, Gareth. *Āryavimuktisena, Maitreya-nātha, and Haribhadra. Abhisamayālaṅkāra with Vṛtti and Alokā*. 4 vols. Fremont, CA: Jain Publishing Company., 2006-2011.

———. *Golden Garland of Eloquence: legs bshad gser phreng*, 4 vols. Fremont, CA: Jain Publishing Company, 2008-2010.

##### 5. *Ornament for the Great Vehicle Sūtras*

mahāyānasūtrālaṅkāra

theg pa chen po'i mdo sde rgyan gyi tshig le'ur byas pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4020)*. TBRC W23703.123:3-80 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5521, vol. 108; Dharma vol. 77.

Sanskrit: Sitansusekhar Bagchi. *Mahāyāna-Sūtrālaṅkārah of Asaṅga* [with Vasubandhu's commentary]. Buddhist Sanskrit Texts 13. Darbhanga, India: Mithila Institute, 1970.

Sanskrit text and translation into French: Sylvain Lévi. *Mahāyānasūtrālaṅkāra, exposé de la doctrine du grand véhicule selon le système Yogācāra*. 2 vols. Paris: Bibliothèque de l'École des Hautes Études, 1907, 1911.

Nāgārjuna (*klu sgrub*, first to second century, C.E.)

*Commentary on the "Seventy Stanzas on Emptiness"*

śūnyatāsaptativṛtti

stong pa nyid bdun cu pa'i 'grel pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3831)*. TBRC W23703.96:221-243 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sun-grab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5231, vol.95.

Edited Tibetan and English translation: Christian Lindtner. *Master of Wisdom*. Oakland: Dharma Publishing, 1986.

*Compendium of Sūtra*

sūtrasamuccaya

mdo kun las btus pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3934)*. TBRC W23703.110:298-431 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sun-grab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5330, vol. 102.

*Conquest Over Mistake*

madhyamakabhramaghāta

dbu ma 'khrul pa 'joms pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3850)*. TBRC W23703.97:49-54 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

*Essay on the Mind of Enlightenment*

bodhicittavivarāṇa

byang chub sems kyi 'grel pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 1800-1801)*. TBRC W23703.35:77-86, vol. ngi (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 2665 and 2666, vol. 61.

Edited Tibetan and Sanskrit fragments along with English translation: Christian Lindtner. *Master of Wisdom: Writings of the Buddhist Master Nāgārjuna*. Oakland: Dharma Publishing, 1986.

*Praise of the Element of Attributes*

dharmadhātustotra

chos kyi dbyings su bstod pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 1118)*. TBRC W23703.1:128-136, vol. ka (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 2010, vol. 46.

*Praise of the Inconceivable*

acintyastava

bsam gyis mi khyab par bstod pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 1128)*. TBRC W23703.1:154-159 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

*Praise of the Supramundane [Buddha]*

lokāṭīstava

'jig rten las 'das par bstod pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 1120)*. TBRC W23703.1:138-140, vol. ka (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 2012, vol. 46.

Edited Tibetan and Sanskrit along with English translation: Christian Lindtner. *Master of Wisdom*. Oakland: Dharma Publishing, 1986.

**Six Collections of Reasoning**

1. *Treatise on the Middle / Fundamental Treatise on the Middle, Called "Wisdom"*

madhyamakāśāstra / prajñānāmamūlamadhyamakakārikā

dbu ma'i bstan bcos / dbu ma rtsa ba'i tshig le'ur byas pa shes rab ces bya ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3824)*. TBRC W23703.96:3-39, vol. tsa (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Kar-mapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5224, vol. 95.

Edited Sanskrit: J. W. de Jong. *Nāgārjuna, Mūlamadhyamakakārikāḥ*. Madras, India: Adyar Library and Research Centre, 1977; reprint, Wheaton, Ill.: Agents, Theosophical Publishing House, c1977. Also: Christian Lindtner. *Nāgārjuna's Filosofiske Vaerker*, 177-215. Indiske Studier 2. Copenhagen: Akademisk Forlag, 1982.



- English translation: Frederick Streng. *Emptiness: A Study in Religious Meaning*. Nashville, Tenn.: Abingdon Press, 1967. Also: Kenneth Inada. *Nāgārjuna: A Translation of His Mūlamadhyamakakārikā*. Tokyo: Hokuseido Press, 1970. Also: David J. Kalupahana. *Nāgārjuna: The Philosophy of the Middle Way*. Albany, N.Y.: State University Press of New York, 1986. Also: Jay L. Garfield. *The Fundamental Wisdom of the Middle Way*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1995. Also: Stephen Batchelor. *Verses from the Center: A Buddhist Vision of the Sublime*. New York: Riverhead Books, 2000.
- Italian translation: R. Gnoli. *Nāgārjuna: Madhyamaka Kārikā, Le stanze del cammino di mezzo*. Enciclopedia di autori classici 61. Turin, Italy: P. Boringhieri, 1961.
- Danish translation: Christian Lindtner. *Nāgārjuna's Filosofiske Vaerker*, 67-135. Indiske Studier 2. Copenhagen: Akademisk Forlag, 1982.
2. *Refutation of Objections*  
vighrahavyāvartanikārikā  
rtsod pa bzlog pa'i tshig le'ur byas pa  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3828)*. TBRC W23703.96:55-59 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5228, vol. 95  
Edited Tibetan and Sanskrit and English translation: Christian Lindtner. *Master of Wisdom*. Oakland: Dharma Publishing, 1986.  
English translation: K. Bhattacharya, E. H. Johnston, and A. Kunst. *The Dialectical Method of Nāgārjuna*. New Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1978.  
English translation from the Chinese: G. Tucci. *Pre-Dinnāga Buddhist Texts on Logic from Chinese Sources*. Gaekwad's Oriental Series, 49. Baroda, India: Oriental Institute, 1929.  
French translation: S. Yamaguchi. "Traité de Nāgārjuna pour écarter les vaines discussions (Vighrahavyāvartanā) traduit et annoté." *Journal Asiatique* 215 (1929): 1-86.
3. *Seventy Stanzas on Emptiness*  
śūnyatāsaptatikārikā  
stong pa nyid bdun cu pa'i tshig le'ur byas pa  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3827)*. TBRC W23703.96:49-55 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5227, vol. 95.  
Edited Tibetan and English translation: Christian Lindtner. *Master of Wisdom*. Oakland: Dharma Publishing, 1986.  
English translation: David Ross Komito. *Nāgārjuna's "Seventy Stanzas": A Buddhist Psychology of Emptiness*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1987.
4. *Sixty Stanzas of Reasoning*  
yuktiṣaṣṭikārikā  
rigs pa drug cu pa'i tshig le'ur byas pa  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3825)*. TBRC W23703.96:42-46 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5225, vol. 95.  
Edited Tibetan with Sanskrit fragments and English translation: Christian Lindtner. *Master of Wisdom*. Oakland: Dharma Publishing, 1986.
5. *Precious Garland of Advice for the King*  
rājaparīkathāratnāvalī  
rgyal po la gdam bya ba rin po che'i phreng ba  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4158)*. TBRC W23703.172:215-253 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5658, vol. 129; Dharma vol. 93.  
Sanskrit, Tibetan, and Chinese: Michael Hahn. *Nāgārjuna's Ratnāvalī*. vol. 1. *The Basic Texts (Sanskrit, Tibetan, and Chinese)*. Bonn: Indica et Tibetica Verlag, 1982.

- English translation: Jeffrey Hopkins. *Buddhist Advice for Living and Liberation: Nāgārjuna's Precious Garland*, 94-164. Ithaca, New York: Snow Lion Publications, 1998. Supersedes that in: Nāgārjuna and the Seventh Dalai Lama. *The Precious Garland and the Song of the Four Mindfulnesses*, translated by Jeffrey Hopkins, 17-93. London: George Allen and Unwin, 1975; New York: Harper and Row, 1975; reprint, in H.H. the Dalai Lama, Tenzin Gyatso. *The Buddhism of Tibet*. London: George Allen and Unwin, 1983; reprint, Ithaca, New York: Snow Lion Publications, 1987.
- English translation: John Dunne and Sara McClintock. *The Precious Garland: An Epistle to a King*. Boston: Wisdom Publications, 1997.
- English translation of 223 stanzas (chap. 1, 1-77; chap. 2, 1-46; chap. 4, 1-100): Giuseppe Tucci. "The *Ratnāvalī* of Nāgārjuna." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (1934): 307-325; (1936): 237-52, 423-35.
- Japanese translation: Uryūzu Ryushin. *Butten II, Sekai Koten Bungaku Zenshu*, 7 (July, 1965): 349-72. Edited by Nakamura Hajime. Tokyo: Chikuma Shobō. Also: Uryūzu Ryushin. *Daijō Butten*, 14 (1974): 231-316. *Ryūju Ronshū*. Edited by Kajiyama Yuichi and Uryūzu Ryushin. Tokyo: Chūōkōronsha.
- Danish translation: Christian Lindtner. *Nagarjuna, Juvelkaeden og andre skrifter*. Copenhagen: 1980.
6. *Treatise Called the Finely Woven vaidalyasūtranāma*  
 zhib mo rnam par 'thag pa zhes bya ba'i mdo  
 Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (sde dge, 3826). TBRC W23703.96:46-49 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5226, vol. 95  
 Tibetan text and English translation: Fernando Tola and Carmen Dragonetti. *Nāgārjuna's Refutation of Logic (Nyāya) Vaidalyaprakaraṇa*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1995.
- Ngag-wang-pal-dan (*ngag dbang dpal ldan*, b.1797), also known as Pal-dan-chō-jay (*dpal ldan chos rje*)  
*Annotations for (Jam-yang-shay-pa's) "Great Exposition of Tenets": Freeing the Knots of the Difficult Points, Precious Jewel of Clear Thought*  
 grub mtha' chen mo'i mchan 'grel dka' gnad mdud blo gsal gces nor  
 Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (nga dbang dpal ldan)*. TBRC W5926.177. 3-356 (Delhi, India: Mongolian Lama Gurudeva, 1983).  
 Sarnath, India: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Press, 1964. Also: Collected Works of Chos-rje ngag-dbañ Dpal-lDan of Urga, vols. 4 (entire)-5, 1-401. Delhi: Guru Deva, 1983.
- Explanation of (Maitreya's) Treatise "Ornament for the Clear Realizations" from the Approach of the Meaning of the Words: Sacred Word of Maitreyanātha*  
 bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan tshig don gyi sgo nas bshad pa byams mgon zhal lung  
 TBRC W5926-3:221-416 (PDF of: Delhi: Gurudeva, 1983).  
 English translations:  
 Hopkins, Jeffrey and Jongbok Yi. *Ngag-wang-pal-dan's Explanation of the Treatise "Ornament for the Clear Realizations" From the Approach of the Meaning of the Words: The Sacred Word of Maitreyanātha*. Dyke, VA: UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, 2014: downloadable at [uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org).  
 ———. (containing 203 of the 274 stanzas) *The Hidden Teaching of the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras: Jam-yang-shay-pa's Seventy Topics and Kōn-chog-jig-may-wang-po's 173 Topics*. Dyke, VA: UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, 2014: downloadable at [uma-tibet.org](http://uma-tibet.org).
- Explanation of the Obscurational and the Ultimate in the Four Systems of Tenets*  
 grub mtha' bzhi'i lugs kyi kun rdzob dang don dam pa'i don rnam par bshad pa legs bshad dpyid kyi dpal mo'i glu dbyangs  
 Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (ngag dbang dpal ldan)*. TBRC W5926.1:9-280 (Delhi: Mongolian Lama Gurudeva, 1983).

- New Delhi: Guru Deva, 1972. Also: Collected Works of Chos-rje ñag-dbañ Dpal-ldan of Urga, vol. 1, 3-273. Delhi: Mongolian Lama Gurudeva, 1983.
- Translation of the chapter on the Great Exposition School: John B. Buescher. *Echoes from an Empty Sky: The Origins of the Buddhist Doctrine of the Two Truths*. Ithaca, Snow Lion Publications: 2012.
- Ngag-wang-lo-sang-gya-tso (*ngag dbang blo bzang rgya mtsho*, Fifth Dalai Lama, 1617-1682)  
*Instructions on the Stages of the Path to Enlightenment: Sacred Word of Mañjuśrī*  
 byang chub lam gyi rim pa'i 'khrid yig 'jam pa'i dbyangs kyi zhal lung  
 Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (ngag dbang blo bzang rgya mtsho)*. TBRC W2CZ5990.12:7-206 (Dharamsala: nam gsal sgron ma, 2007).  
 Thimphu, Bhutan: kun bzang stobs rgyal, 1976.  
 English translation of the "Perfection of Wisdom Chapter": Jeffrey Hopkins. "Practice of Emptiness." Dharmasala: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1974.
- Pa-bong-ka-pa Jam-pa-ten-dzin-trin-lay-gya-tso (*pha bong kha pa byams pa bstan 'dzin 'phrin las rgya mtsho*, 1878-1941)  
*Presentation of the Interpretable and the Definitive, Brief Notes on the Occasion of Receiving Profound [Instruction from Jo-ne Pañdita Lo-sang-gya-tso in 1927] on (Tsong-kha-pa's) "The Essence of Eloquence"*  
 drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par bzhag pa legs par bshad pa'i snying po'i zab nos skabs kyi zin bris mdo tsam du bkod pa  
 Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (bde chen snying po)*. TBRC W3834.4:417-494 (Lha sa: [s.n.], [199-]).  
 Collected Works of Pha-boñ-kha-pa-bstan-'dzin-'phrin-las-rgya-mtsho, vol. 4, 400-476. New Delhi: Chopel Legdan, 1973.
- Pal-jor-hlün-drub, Nyal-tön (*dpal 'byor lhün grub, gnyal [or gnyan] ston*, 1427-1514)  
*Lamp for the Teaching / Commentary on the Difficult Points of (Tsong-kha-pa's) "The Essence of Eloquence": Lamp for the Teaching*  
 legs bshad snying po'i dka' 'grel bstan pa'i sgron me  
 Delhi: Rong-tha Mchog-sprul-rnam-pa-gnyis, 1969.
- Pañ-chen Sö-nam-drag-pa (*pañ chen bsod nams grags pa*, 1478-1554)  
*Distinguishing through Objections and Answers (Tsong-kha-pa's) "Differentiating the Interpretable and Definitive Meanings of All the Scriptures, The Essence of Eloquence": Garland of Blue Lotus*  
 gsung rab kun gyi drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa legs par bshad pa'i snying po brgal lan gyis rnam par 'byed pa utpa la'i phreng ba  
 TBRC W923. 1 vols (dga' ldan: dga' ldan rnam par rgyal ba'i gling , 1985).  
 Collected Works (gsun 'bum) of Pañ-chen Bsod-nams-grags-pa, vol. 5. Mundgod, India: Drepung Loseling Library Society, 1982.
- General-Meaning Commentary on the Perfection of Wisdom/ Good Explanation of the Meaning of (Gyal-tshab's) "Explanation Illuminating the Meaning of the Commentaries on (Maitreya's) 'Treatise of Quintessential Instructions on the Perfection of Wisdom, Ornament for the Clear Realizations': Ornament for the Essence": Lamp Illuminating the Meaning of the Mother*  
 phar phyin spyi don/ shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan 'grel pa dang bcas pa'i rnam bshad snying po rgyan gyi don legs par bshad pa yum don gsal ba'i sgron me  
 Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (bsod nams grags pa)*. TBRC W23828.3:9-510 (PDF of Mundgod, Karnataka: Drepung Loseling Library Society, 1982-1990).  
 Buxaduor: Nang bstan shes rig 'dzin skyong slob gnyer khang, 1963.
- Prajñākaramati (*shes rab 'byung gnas blo gros*, 950-1030)  
*Summary of (Haribhadra's) "Commentary on (Maitreya's) 'Ornament for the Clear Realizations'"*

abhisamayālamkāravṛttipiṇḍārtha

mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi 'grel pa'i bsdus don

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3795)*. TBRC W23703.86:510-551. (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5193, vol. 91.

Ratnākaraśānti (*rin chen 'byung gnas zhi ba*)

*Commentary on (Nāgārjuna's) "Compendium of Sūtra," Ornament Sparkling with Jewels*

sūtrasamuccayabhāṣyaratnālokālamkāra

mdo kun las btus pa'i bshad pa rin po che'i snang ba'i rgyan

In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3935)*. TBRC W23703.110:431-669 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5331, vol. 102

*Commentary on the Difficult Points of the "Eight Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra": The Supreme Essence*

ārya-aṣṭasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitāpañjikāsārottamā

phags pa shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa brgyad stong pa'i dka' 'grel snying po mchog

In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3803)*. TBRC W23703.89:4-461 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

P5200, vol. 92

*Pure Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Ornament for the Clear Realizations"*

abhisamayālamkārakārikāvṛtṭisuddhamafnāma

mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan gyi 'grel pa'i tshig le'ur byas pa'i 'grel pa dag ldan

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3801)*. TBRC W23703.88:152-409. (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5199, vol. 91

*Quintessential Instructions on the Perfection of Wisdom*

prajñāpāramitopadeśa

shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i man ngag

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4079)*. TBRC W23703.138:269-326 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

P5579, vol. 114

Shāntideva (*zhi ba lha, eighth century*)

*Compendium of Instructions*

śikṣāsamuccaya

bslab pa kun las btus pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3940)*. TBRC W23703.111:7-390 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5272, vol. 102

English Translation: C. Bendall and W.H.D. Rouse. *Śikṣā Samuccaya*. Delhi: Motilal, 1971.

Edited Sanskrit: Cecil Bendall. *Çikṣhāsamuccaya: A Compendium of Buddhist Teaching*. Bibliotheca Buddhica 1. Osnabrück, Germany: Biblio Verlag, 1970.

*Engaging in the Bodhisattva Deeds*

bodhi[sattva]caryāvatāra

byang chub sems dpa'i spyod pa la 'jug pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 3871)*. TBRC W23703.105: 84-578, dbu ma, vol. la (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Sanskrit: P. L. Vaidya. *Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Buddhist Sanskrit Texts 12. Darbhanga, India: Mithila Institute, 1988.

Sanskrit and Tibetan: Vidhushekara Bhattacharya. *Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Bibliotheca Indica, 280. Calcutta: Asiatic Society, 1960.

Sanskrit and Tibetan with Hindi translation: Rāmaśaṅkara Tripāthī, ed. *Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Bauddha-Himālaya-Granthamālā, 8. Leh, Ladākh: Central Institute of Buddhist Studies, 1989.

English translations:

Stephen Batchelor. *A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life*. Dharmasala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1979.

Marion Matics. *Entering the Path of Enlightenment*. New York: Macmillan, 1970.

Kate Crosby and Andrew Skilton. *The Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996.

Padmakara Translation Group. *The Way of the Bodhisattva*. Boston: Shambhala, 1997.

Vesna A. Wallace and B. Alan Wallace. *A Guide to the Bodhisattva Way of Life*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1997.

Contemporary commentary:

H.H. the Dalai Lama, Tenzin Gyatso. *Transcendent Wisdom*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1988.

H.H. the Dalai Lama, Tenzin Gyatso. *A Flash of Lightning in the Dark of the Night*. Boston: Shambhala, 1994.

Smr̥tījñānakīrti

*Indicating Through Eight Concordant Meanings the Mother Perfection of Wisdom Taught Extensively in One Hundred Thousand, Taught in Medium Length in Twenty-five Thousand, and Taught in Brief in Eight Thousand [Stanzas]*

prajñāpāramitāmātrikāśatasāhasrikābrhacchāsana-

pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikāmadyaśāsanāṣṭādaśasāhasrikālaghuśāsanāṣṭasamānārthasāsanam

yum shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa brgyas par bstan pa 'bum dang 'bring du bstan pa nyi khri lnga stong dang bsdus te bstan pa khri brgyad stong pa mams mthun par don brgyad kiyis bstan pa

In *bstan 'gyur* (*sde dge*, 3789). TBRC W23703.81:365-487 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapa choedhey, Gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

P5187, vol. 88.

Tshe-chog-ling Ye-shay-gyal-tshan (*tshe mchog gling ye shes rgyal mtshan*, 1713-1793)

*Quintessential Instructions Clearly Teaching the Essentials of (Tsong-kha-pa's) "Stages of the Path to Enlightenment," Correlating the "Eight Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra" with (Maitreya's) "Ornament for Clear Realization": Lamp Illuminating the Perfection of Wisdom* sher phyin stong phrag brgyad pa dang mngon rtogs rgyan sbyar te byang chub lam gyi rim pa'i gnad mams gsal bar ston pa'i man ngag sher phyin gsal ba'i sgron me

Tibetan digital reprint edition: TBRC W1022.7: 8-174 (PDF of: New Delhi, India: Tibet House, 1975).

Collected Works, vol. 7. New Delhi, India: Tibet House, 1975.

Tsong-kha-pa Lo-sang-drag-pa (*tsong kha pa blo bzang grags pa*, 1357-1419)

*Explanation of (Nāgārjuna's) "Treatise on the Middle": Ocean of Reasoning / Great Commentary on (Nāgārjuna's) "Treatise on the Middle"*

dbu ma rtsa ba'i tshig le'ur byas pa shes rab ces bya ba'i nam bshad rigs pa'i rgya mtsho / rtsa shes tik chen

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum* (*tsong kha pa, bla brang par ma*). TBRC W22273.15:5-622 (PDF of bla brang: bla brang bkra shis 'khyil, [199?]).

Peking 6153, vol. 156.

Also: Sarnath, India: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Printing Press, n.d. Also: *rJe tsong kha pa'i gsung dbu ma'i lta ba'i skor*, vols. 1-2. Sarnath, India: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Press, 1975. Also: Delhi: Ngawang Gelek, 1975. Also: Delhi: Guru Deva, 1979.

English translation: Geshe Ngawang Samten and Jay L. Garfield. *Ocean of Reasoning: A Great Commentary on Nāgārjuna's Mūlamadhyamakakārikā*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2006.

English translation (chap. 2): Jeffrey Hopkins. *Ocean of Reasoning*. Dharmasala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1974.

*Extensive Explanation of (Chandrakīrti's) "Supplement to (Nāgārjuna's) 'Treatise on the Middle'"*: *Illumination of the Extensive Explanation of (Chandrakīrti's) "Supplement to (Nāgārjuna's) 'Treatise on the Middle'"*: *Illumination of the Thought*

dbu ma la 'jug pa'i rgya cher bshad pa dgongs pa rab gsal

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (tsong kha pa, bla brang par ma)*. TBRC W22273.16:5-582 (PDF of bla brang: bla brang bkra shis 'khyil, [199?]).

Peking 6143, vol. 154.

Also: Dharmasala, India: Tibetan Cultural Printing Press, n.d.; Sarnath, India: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Press, 1973; Delhi: Ngawang Gelek, 1975; Delhi: Guru Deva, 1979.

English translation (chaps. 1-5): Jeffrey Hopkins. *Compassion in Tibetan Buddhism*, 93-230. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1980; the portion of the book that is Tsong-kha-pa's *Illumination of the Thought* (chapters 1-5) is downloadable at:

[http://uma-tibet.org/edu/gomang/dbu\\_ma/middle.php](http://uma-tibet.org/edu/gomang/dbu_ma/middle.php).

English translation (chap. 6, stanzas 1-7): Jeffrey Hopkins and Anne C. Klein. *Path to the Middle: Madhyamaka Philosophy in Tibet: The Oral Scholarship of Kensur Yeshay Tupden*, by Anne C. Klein, 147-183, 252-271. Albany, N.Y.: State University of New York Press, 1994.

*Four Interwoven Annotations on (Tsong-kha-pa's) "Great Exposition of the Stages of the Path" / The Lam rim chen mo of the incomparable Tsong-kha-pa, with the interlineal notes of Ba-so Chos-kyi-rgyal-mtshan, Sde-drug Mkhan-chen Ngag-dbang-rab-rtan, 'Jam-dbyangs-bshad-pa'i-rdo-rje, and Bra-sti Dge-bshes Rin-chen-don-grub*

lam rim mchan bzhi sbrags ma/ mnyam med rje btsun tsong kha pa chen pos mdzad pa'i byang chub lam rim chen mo 'i dka' ba'i gnad rnams mchan bu bzhi'i sgo nas legs par bshad pa theg chen lam gyi gsal sgron

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *lam rim mchan bzhi sbrags ma (bla brang bkra shis 'khyil par ma)*. TBRC W29037.1:3- 978 (PDF of bla brang bkra shis 'khyil edition printed from the 1807 bla brang bkra shis 'khyil blocks in 1999?).

Also: New Delhi: Chos-'phel-legs-Idan, 1972

*Golden Garland of Eloquence / Extensive Explanation of (Maitreya's) "Treatise of Quintessential Instructions on the Perfection of Wisdom: Ornament for the Clear Realizations" as Well as Its Commentaries: Golden Garland of Eloquence*

legs bshad gser 'phreng / shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa'i man ngag gi bstan bcos mngon par rtogs pa'i rgyan 'grel pa dang bcas pa'i rgya cher bshad pa legs bshad gser gyi phreng ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum/ tsong kha pa (bkra shis lhün po par rnying)*. TBRC W29193.18:5-580 (PDF of Dharmasala: Sherig Parkhang, 1997. Also TBRC W22109.3219 (PDF of gedan sungrab minyam gyunphel series, Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1977).

English translation: Sparham, Gareth. *Golden Garland of Eloquence: legs bshad gser phreng*, 4 vols. Fremont, CA: Jain Publishing Company, 2008-2010.

*Great Exposition of Secret Mantra / The Stages of the Path to a Conqueror and Pervasive Master, a Great Vajradhara: Revealing All Secret Topics*

sngags rim chen mo / rgyal ba khyab bdag rdo rje 'chang chen po'i lam gyi rim pa gsang ba kun gyi gnad rnam par phyé ba

Tibetan digital reprint edition: TBRC W2CZ7854. 1 vols. (PDF of Lhasa: dpal Idan, date unknown).

Peking 6210, vol. 161. Also: Delhi: Ngawang Gelek, 1975. Also: Delhi: Guru Deva, 1979.

English translation (chap. 1): H.H. the Dalai Lama, Tsong-kha-pa, and Jeffrey Hopkins. *Tantra in Tibet*. London: George Allen and Unwin, 1977; reprint, with minor corrections, Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1987.

English translation (chaps. 2-3): H.H. the Dalai Lama, Tsong-kha-pa, and Jeffrey Hopkins. *The Yoga of Tibet*. London: George Allen and Unwin, 1981; reprinted as *Deity Yoga*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1987.

- English translation (chap. 4): H.H. the Dalai Lama, Dzong-ka-ba, and Jeffrey Hopkins. *Yoga Tantra: Paths to Magical Feats*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2005.
- Great Exposition of the Stages of the Path / Stages of the Path to Enlightenment Thoroughly Teaching All the Stages of Practice of the Three Types of Beings*  
lam rim chen mo / skyes bu gsum gyi nyams su blang ba'i rim pa thams cad tshang bar ston pa'i byang chub lam gyi rim pa  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (tsong kha pa, bla brang par ma)*. TBRC W22273.13:51026 (PDF of bla brang: bla brang bkra shis 'khyil, [199?]). Peking 6001, vol. 152.  
Dharmasala, India: Tibetan Cultural Printing Press, 1964.  
Delhi: Ngawang Gelek, 1975. Also: Delhi: Guru Deva, 1979.
- Edited Tibetan: Tsultrim Kelsang Khangkar. *The Great Treatise on the Stages of the Path to Enlightenment (Lam Rim Chen Mo)*. Japanese and Tibetan Buddhist Culture Series, 6. Kyoto: Tibetan Buddhist Culture Association, 2001.
- English translation: Lamrim Chenmo Translation Committee. *The Great Treatise on the Stages of the Path to Enlightenment*. 3 vols. Joshua W.C. Cutler, editor-in-chief, Guy Newland, editor. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2000-2004.
- English translation of the part on the excessively broad object of negation: Elizabeth Napper. *Dependent-Arising and Emptiness*, 153-215. London: Wisdom Publications, 1989.
- English translation of the part on the excessively narrow object of negation: William Magee. *The Nature of Things: Emptiness and Essence in the Geluk World*, 179-192. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1999.
- English translation of the parts on calm abiding and special insight: Alex Wayman. *Calming the Mind and Discerning the Real*, 81-431. New York: Columbia University Press, 1978; reprint, New Delhi, Motilal Banarsidass, 1979.
- Introduction to the Seven Treatises on Prime Cognition: Clearing Away the Mental Darkness of Seekers*  
sde bdun la 'jug pa'i sgo don gnyer yid kyi mun sel  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: TBRC W1KG4466. 1 vol (PDF of Sarnath, India: dge ldan spyi las khang, 1972).  
sde dge, 5416.  
New Zhol Par-khang edition of the collected works of Tsong-kha-pa, Vol. tsha.
- Medium-Length Exposition of the Stages of the Path to Enlightenment to be Practiced by Beings of the Three Capacities / Medium-Length Exposition of the Stages of the Path to Enlightenment to be Practiced by Beings of the Three Capacities together with an Outline / Short Exposition of the Stages of the Path to Enlightenment*  
skyes bu gsum gyis nyams su blang ba'i byang chub lam gyi rim pa / skyes bu gsum gyi nyams su blang ba'i byang chub lam gyi rim pa bring po sa bead kha skong dang beas pa / lam rim 'bring / lam rim chung ngu  
Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (tsong kha pa, bla brang par ma)*. TBRC W22273.14:5-474 (PDF of bla brang: bla brang bkra shis 'khyil, [199?]); Peking 6002, vol. 152-153.  
Also: Mundgod, India: dga' ldan shar rtse, n.d. (includes outline of topics by Trijang Rinbochay); Bylakuppe, India: Sera Je Library, 1999 (includes outline of topics by Trijang Rinbochay); Dharmasala, India: Tibetan Cultural Printing Press, 1968; Delhi: Ngawang Gelek, 1975. Also: Delhi: Guru Deva, 1979.
- English translation of the section on special insight:  
Jeffrey Hopkins. In *Tsong-kha-pa's Final Exposition of Wisdom*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2008.  
Robert Thurman. "The Middle Transcendent Insight." *Life and Teachings of Tsong Khapa*, 108-185. Dharmasala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1982.

Edited Tibetan text and Japanese translation of the section on special insight: Tsultrim Kelsang Khangkar and Takada Yorihiro. *A Study of Tsong khapa's Mādhyamika Philosophy 1: Annotated Japanese translation of the Vipāśyanā Section of Medium Exposition of the Stages of the Path (Lam rim)*. Tsong kha pa chuugan tetsugaku no kenkyuu 1, Bodaidousidairon chuuhon, kan no shou: wayaku, Tsultrim Kelsang Khangkar and Takada Yorihiro, Kyoto: Buncido, 1996.

Japanese translation: Tsultrim Kelsang Khangkar and Takashi Rujinaka. *The Treatise on the Stages of the Path to Enlightenment by rJe Tsong kha pa: An Annotated Japanese Translation of Byang chub Lam rim chung ba*. Kyoto: Unio Corporation, 2005.

*Praise of Dependent-Arising / Praise of the Supramundane Victor Buddha from the Approach of His Teaching the Profound Dependent-Arising: The Essence of Eloquence / Praise of the Supramundane Buddha from the Viewpoint of Dependent-Arising*

rten 'brel bstod pa / sang rgyas bcom ldan 'das la zab mo rten cing 'brel bar 'byung ba gsung ba'i sgo nas bstod pa legs par bshad pa'i snying po

Tibetan digital reprint edition: TBRC W8LS16232 (no publication data).

Peking 6016, vol. 153. Also: Delhi: Ngawang Gelek, 1975. Also: Delhi: Guru Deva, 1979.

English translation: Geshe Wangyal. *The Door of Liberation*, 175-186. New York: Maurice Girodias Associates, 1973; reprint, New York: Lotsawa, 1978; rev. ed., Boston: Wisdom, 1995. Also: Robert Thurman. *Life and Teachings of Tsong Khapa*, 99-107. Dharmasala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1982.

*Three Principal Aspects of the Path*

lam gtso mnam gsum

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bka' 'bum (thor bu: tsong kha pa)*, volume kha. TBRC W486.1:356-369 (PDF of Zi Ling: mtsho sngon mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 1987).

Peking 6087, Vol. 153.

*Treatise Differentiating Interpretable and Definitive Meanings: The Essence of Eloquence*

drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par phye ba'i bstan bcos legs bshad snying po

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *gsung 'bum (tsong kha pa)*. TBRC W29193.14:483-720 (PDF of Dharmasala: Sherig Parkhang, 1997).

Peking 6142, vol. 153.

English translation of the Prologue and Mind-Only section: Jeffrey Hopkins. *Emptiness in the Mind-Only School of Buddhism. Dynamic Responses to Dzong-ka-ba's The Essence of Eloquence*, Volume 1. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1999.

English translation of the entire text: Robert A. F. Thurman. *Tsong Khapa's Speech of Gold in the Essence of True Eloquence*, 185-385. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press, 1984.

Editions: see the preface to my critical edition of the Introduction and section on the Mind-Only School, *Emptiness in Mind-Only*, 355. Also:

Palden Drakpa and Damdul Namgyal. *drang nges legs bshad snying po: The Essence of Eloquent Speech on the Definitive and Interpretable*, 84.16-103.5. Mundgod, India: SOKU, 1991.

Ye shes thabs mkhas. *shar tsong kha pa blo bzang grags pas mdzad pa'i drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i bstan bcos legs bshad snying po (The Eastern Tsong-kha-pa Lo-sang-drag-pa's "Treatise Differentiating Interpretable and Definitive Meanings: The Essence of Eloquence")*. Tā la'i bla ma'i 'phags bod, vol. 22. Part Two, 125.1-145.13.

Varanasi: Central Institute for Higher Tibetan Studies, 1997.

Vasubandhu (*dbyig gnyen*, fl. 360)

*Commentary on (Aśaṅga's) "Summary of the Great Vehicle"*

mahāyānasamgrahabhāṣya

theg pa chen po bsdu pa'i 'grel pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4050)*. TBRC W23703.134:244-381 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5551, vol. 112



*Commentary on (Maitreya's) "Differentiation of the Middle and the Extremes"*

madhyāntavibhāgatīkā

dbus dang mtha' nram par 'byed pa'i 'grel pa / dbus mtha'i 'grel pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (sde dge, 4027). TBRC W23703.124:4-55 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5528, vol. 108

Sanskrit: Gadgin M. Nagao. *Madhyāntavibhāga-bhāṣya*. Tokyo: Suzuki Research Foundation, 1964. Also: Ramchandra Pandeya. *Madhyānta-vibhāga-śāstra*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1971.*Commentary on the "Sūtra on Dependent-Arising"*

pratītyasamutpadādivibhaṅganirdeśa

rten 'brel mdo 'grel/ rten cing 'brel par 'byung ba dang po dang nram par dbye ba bshad pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (sde dge, 3995). TBRC W23703.115:4-123 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5496, vol. 107

*Commentary on the "Sūtra on the Ten Grounds"*

daśabhūmivyākhyāna

sa bcu'i nram par bshad pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (sde dge, 3993). TBRC W23703.113:208533 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5494, vol. 104

*Commentary on the "Teachings of Akṣhayamati Sūtra"*

āryākṣayamatinirdeśatīkā

'phags pa blo gros mi zad pas bstan pa rgya cher 'grel pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (sde dge, 3994). TBRC W23703.114:4-539. (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).*Explanation of (Maitreya's) "Ornament for the Great Vehicle Sūtras"*

sūtrāḷaṃkārahāṣya

mdo sde'i rgyan gyi bshad pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur* (sde dge, 4026). TBRC W23703.123:260-521 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Karmapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5527, vol. 108

Sanskrit: S. Bagchi. *Mahāyāna-Sūtrāḷaṃkāra of Aśaṅga* [with Vasubandhu's commentary]. *Buddhist Sanskrit Texts* 13. Darbhanga, India: Mithila Institute, 1970.Sanskrit and translation into French: Sylvain Lévi. *Mahāyānasūtrāḷaṃkāra, exposé de la doctrine du grand véhicule selon le système Yogācāra*. 2 vols. Paris: Libraire Honoré Champion, 1907, 1911.*Extensive Explanation of the Superior One Hundred Thousand Stanza, Twenty-five Thousand Stanza, and Eighteen Thousand Stanza Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras / Conquest Over Objections about the Three Mothers<sup>a</sup>*

'aryaśatasāhasrikāpañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā-aṣṭadaśasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitābhrhātīkā

'phags pa shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa 'bum pa dang nyi khri lnga stong pa dang khri brygad stong pa'i rgya cher bshad pa / yum gsum gnod 'joms

No TBRC data found.

Peking 5206, vol. 93

*Principles of Explanation*

vyākhyayukti

nram par bshad pa'i rigs pa

<sup>a</sup> This text is attributed by Tsong-kha-pa to Damaṣṭasena (*damṣṭasena*).

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4061)*. TBRC W23703.136:59-270 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Kar-mapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985). Peking 5562, vol. 113.

*The Thirty / Treatise on Cognition-Only in Thirty Stanzas*

triṃśikākārikā / sarvavijñānamātradesakatriṃśakākārikā

sum cu pa'i tshig le'ur byas pa / thams cad rnam rig tsam du ston pa sum cu pa'i tshig le'ur byas pa

*bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4055)*. TBRC W23703.213 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Kar-mapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5556, vol. 113

Sanskrit: Sylvain Lévi. *Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi / Deux traités de Vasubandhu: Viṃśatikā (La Vingtaine) et Triṃśikā (La Trentaine)*. Bibliothèque de l'École des Hautes Études. Paris: Libraire Honoré Champion, 1925. Also: K. N. Chatterjee. *Vijñapti-Mātratā-Siddhi (with Shīramati's Commentary)*. Varanasi, India: Kishor Vidya Niketan, 1980.

English translation: Stefan Anacker. *Seven Works of Vasubandhu*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1984. Also: Thomas A. Kochumuttom. *A Buddhist Doctrine of Experience*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1982.

*The Twenty*

viṃśatikā / viṃśikākārikā

nyi shu pa'i tshig le'ur byas pa

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4056)*. TBRC W23703.136:7-9 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Kar-mapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5557, vol. 113

Sanskrit: Sylvain Lévi. *Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi / Deux traités de Vasubandhu: Viṃśatikā (La Vingtaine) et Triṃśikā (La Trentaine)*. Bibliothèque de l'École des Hautes Études. Paris: Libraire Honoré Champion, 1925.

English translation: Stefan Anacker. *Seven Works of Vasubandhu*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1984. Also: Thomas A. Kochumuttom. *A Buddhist Doctrine of Experience*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1982.

English translation (stanzas 1-10): Gregory A. Hillis. *An Introduction and Translation of Vinītadeva's Explanation of the First Ten Stanzas of [Vasubandhu's] Commentary on His "Twenty Stanzas," with Appended Glossary of Technical Terms*. Ann Arbor, Mich.: University Microfilms, 1993.

*Treasury of Manifest Knowledge*

abhidharmakośa

chos mngon pa'i mdzod

Tibetan digital reprint edition: In *bstan 'gyur (sde dge, 4089)*. TBRC W23703.140:3-51 (PDF of Delhi, India: Delhi Kar-mapae choedhey, gyalwae sungrab partun khang, 1982-1985).

Peking 5590, vol. 115

Sanskrit: Swami Dwarikadas Shastri. *Abhidharmakośa and Bhāṣya of Ācārya Vasubandhu with Sphuṭārtha Commentary of Ācārya Yaśomitra*. Bauddha Bharati Series, 5. Banaras: Bauddha Bharati, 1970. Also: P. Pradhan. *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam of Vasubandhu*. Patna, India: Jayaswal Research Institute, 1975.

French translation: Louis de La Vallée Poussin. *L'Abhidharmakośa de Vasubandhu*. 6 vols. Brussels: Institut Belge des Hautes Études Chinoises, 1971.

English translation of the French: Leo M. Pruden. *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam*. 4 vols. Berkeley, Calif.: Asian Humanities Press, 1988.

### 3. OTHER WORKS

- Amano, Kōei. *A study on the Abhisamaya-alamkāra-kārikā-śāstra-vṛtti*. Rev. ed. Yanai City, Japan: Rokoku Bunko, 2008.
- Bastian, Edward Winslow. *Mahāyāna Buddhist Religious Practice and the Perfection of Wisdom: According to the Abhisamayālamkāra and the Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā: (The Interpretation of the First Two Topics by Haribhadra, Rgyal-Tshab Dar-Ma-Rin-Chen, and Rje-Btsun Chos-Kyi Rgyal-Mtshan*. Ann Arbor, MI: University Microfilms International, 1980.
- Brunnhözl, Karl. *Gone Beyond: The Prajñāpāramitā Sūtras, The Ornament of Clear Realization, and its Commentaries in the Tibetan Kagyü Tradition*. The Tsadra Foundation series. 2 vols. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion Publications, 2011-2012.
- . *Groundless Paths: The Prajñāpāramitā Sūtras, The Ornament of Clear Realization, and Its Commentaries in the Tibetan Nyingma Tradition*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion Publications, 2012.
- Conze, Edward. *Abhisamayālaṅkāra: Introduction and Translation from Original Text with Sanskrit-Tibetan Index*. Roma, Italy: Is. M.E.O., 1954.
- . *The Gülit manuscript of the Aṣṭādaśasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā: Chapters 55 to 70 corresponding to the 5th Abhisamaya*. Roma, Italy: Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1962.
- . *The Large Sūtra on Perfect Wisdom, with the Divisions of the Abhisamayālaṅkāra*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 1975.
- . *The Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines & Its Verse Summary*. Bolinas, Calif.: Four Seasons Foundation, 1973.
- Dhargey, Geshe Ngawang. "A Short Biography" in *Life and Teachings of Tsong Khapa*, ed. Robert A. F. Thurman. Dharmasala: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1982. 4-39.
- H.H. the Dalai Lama, Tsong-kha-pa, and Jeffrey Hopkins. *Tantra in Tibet*. London: George Allen and Unwin, 1977; reprint, with minor corrections, Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1987.
- Hopkins, Jeffrey. "Extracts from (Si-tu Pañ-chen Chō-kyi-jung-nay's) 'Explanation of (Tōn-mi Sam-ahoṭa's) The Thirty.'" Unpublished.
- . *Absorption In No External World: 170 Issues in Mind-Only Buddhism. Dynamic Responses to Dzong-ka-ba's The Essence of Eloquence, Volume 3*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2005.
- . *Emptiness in the Mind-Only School of Buddhism. Dynamic Responses to Dzong-ka-ba's The Essence of Eloquence, Volume 1*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1999.
- . *Meditation on Emptiness*. London: Wisdom Publications, 1983; rev. ed., Boston, Ma.: Wisdom Publications, 1996.
- . *Maps of the Profound: Jam-yang-shay-ba's Great Exposition of Buddhist and Non-Buddhist Views on the Nature of Reality*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2003.
- . *Nāgārjuna's Precious Garland: Buddhist Advice for Living and Liberation*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion Publications, 2007.
- . *Reflections on Reality: the Three Natures and Non-Natures in the Mind-Only School. Dynamic Responses to Dzong-ka-ba's The Essence of Eloquence, Volume 2*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2002.
- Hopkins, Jeffrey, and Elizabeth Napper. "Grammar Summaries for Tibetan." Unpublished.
- Maher, Derek F. "Knowledge and Authority in Tibetan Middle Way Schools of Buddhism: A Study of the Gelukba (*dge lugs pa*) Epistemology of Jamyang Shayba (*'jam dbyangs bzhad pa*) In Its Historical Context." Ph.D. diss., University of Virginia, 2003.
- Napper, Elizabeth. *Kön-chog-jig-may-wang-po's Presentation of the Grounds and Paths with Denma Locho's Commentary*. UMA Institute for Tibetan Studies, forthcoming 2014; downloadable free online at: [http://uma-tibet.org/edu/gomang/phar\\_phyin/salam.php](http://uma-tibet.org/edu/gomang/phar_phyin/salam.php).
- Obermiller, Eugène. *Analysis of the Abhisamayālamkāra (Fasc. 1)*. Calcutta Oriental Series No. 27. London: Luzac & Co., 1936. Reprint ed. Fremont, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 2001.

- Sopa, Geshe Lhündup, and Jeffrey Hopkins. *Cutting through Appearances: The Practice and Theory of Tibetan Buddhism*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion Publications, 1989.
- Sparham, Gareth. *Maitreyanātha, Āryavimuktisena, and Haribhadra. Abhisamayālamkāra with Vṛtti and Ālokā*. 4 vols. Fremont, CA: Jain Publishing Company., 2006-2011.
- . *Detailed Explanation of the Ornament and Brief Called Golden Garland of Eloquence by Tsong kha pa*, 4 vols. Fremont, CA: Jain Publishing Company, 2008-2010.
- Stcherbatsky, Theodore and Eugène Obermiller, eds. *Abhisamayālamkāra-Prajñāpāramitā-Upadeśaśāstra: The Work of Bodhisattva Maitreya*. Bibliotheca Buddhica 23. Osnabrück, Germany: Biblio Verlag, 1970. Reprint ed. Delhi, India: Sri Satguru Publications, 1992.
- Tsong-kha-pa, Kensur Lekden, and Jeffrey Hopkins. *Compassion in Tibetan Buddhism*. London: Rider, 1980; reprint, Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 1980. Available free online at [http://uma-tibet.org/edu/gomang/dbu\\_ma/middle.php](http://uma-tibet.org/edu/gomang/dbu_ma/middle.php).
- Zahler, Leah. *Study and Practice of Meditation: Tibetan Interpretations of the Concentrations and Formless Absorptions*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, 2009.